

Bibliothèque,  
Le Séminaire de Québec,  
3, rue de l'Université,  
Québec 4, QUE.

366, B

Berthe Trotter

2eme Division

Sept

1904-05-02-07-08-

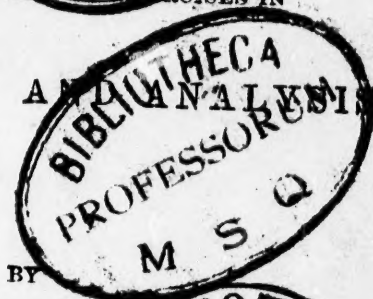
BULLIONS'S

# SCHOOL GRAMMAR.



PRACTICAL LESSONS AND EXERCISES IN

COMPOSITION AND ANALYSIS



BY

PETER BULLIONS, D.D.,

AUTHOR OF THE SERIES OF ENGLISH, LATIN, AND GREEK GRAMMARS  
LATIN AND GREEK READERS, ETC.



MONTREAL

W. V. DAWSON, PUBLISHER

1899

129  
Starguente / archueau

20 dec. / 906

Classe Anglaise

# CONTENTS.

•• The figures in full-faced type are the numbers of the paragraphs.

|  |             |
|--|-------------|
| INTRODUCTORY EXERCISES .....                                 | PAGE<br>iii |
| DEFINITION AND DIVISION, 1-5 .....                           | 1           |
| PART FIRST.—ORTHOGRAPHY.                                     |             |
| Letters and Syllables, 6-26 .....                            | 2-4         |
| PART SECOND.—ETYMOLOGY.                                      |             |
| Division of Words, 27-30 .....                               | 4           |
| Parts of Speech, 31-35 .....                                 | 4           |
| Of Nouns, 36 .....   | 5           |
| Person, 43-52 .....  | 7           |
| Gender, 53-61 .....  | 9           |
| Number, 62-77 .....  | 11          |
| Case, 78-90 .....  | 15          |
| Of the Article, 91-101 .....                                 | 17          |
| Of the Adjective, 102-126 .....                              | 19          |
| Comparison of, 127 .....                                     | 22          |
| Pronouns, 127 .....  | 25          |
| Personal, 135 .....  | 26          |
| Compound, 145 .....  | 27          |
| Relative, 148 .....  | 29          |
| Interrogative, 162 .....                                     | 32          |
| Adjective, 167 .....   | 34          |
| Exercises on Nouns, Articles, Adjectives, and Pronouns ..... | 36          |
| Of Verbs, Division of, 178 .....                             | 37          |
| Forms of, 191 .....  | 40          |
| Inflection—Voice, 202-212 .....                              | 43          |
| Of the Moods, 213 .....                                      | 45          |
| Tenses, 226 .....  | 47          |
| Number and Person, 256 .....                                 | 52          |
| Conjugation, 268 .....                                       | 54          |
| The Verb "To Be," 273 .....                                  | 55          |
| The Verb "To Love," 274 .....                                | 58          |
| Negative Form of the Verb, 278 .....                         | 64          |
| Interrogative Form, 281 .....                                | 65          |
| Progressive Form of the Active Voice, 285 .....              | 67          |
| Passive Voice, 287 .....                                     | 68          |
| Irregular Verbs, 288 .....                                   | 72          |
| Defective and Impersonal Verbs, 290-292 .....                | 79          |
| Adverbs, 293 .....   | 80          |
| Prepositions, 303 .....                                      | 83          |
| Conjunctions, 311 .....                                      | 85          |
| Interjections, 317 .....                                     | 87          |
| How to Distinguish the Parts of Speech, 321 .....            | 88          |
| Parsing, 326 .....   | 90          |
| Model of, 328 .....  | 92          |
| Exercises in, 330 .....                                      | 93          |



## PART THIRD.—SYNTAX.

|  |     |
|--|-----|
| <b>Analysis of Sentences, Definitions, 331</b> ..... | 96  |
| Parts of a Sentence, 340.....                        | 96  |
| Classes of Sentences, 350.....                       | 98  |
| Single Sentences, 355.....                           | 99  |
| <b>SUBJECT OF A SENTENCE, 360</b> .....              | 100 |
| Modifications of, 368.....                           | 101 |
| Modifications of Modifying Words, 370.....           | 102 |
| <b>THE PREDICATE, 372</b> .....                      | 103 |
| Modification of, 381.....                            | 104 |
| Limiti Clauses, 38.....                              | 105 |
| Compound Sentences 399.....                          | 107 |
| Classification of Sentences.....                     | 108 |
| <b>Directions for Analysis, 403</b> .....            | 109 |
| Models, 404.....                                     | 109 |
| <b>Construction of Sentences, 405</b> .....          | 112 |
| Parts of Syntax, 407.....                            | 114 |
| <b>Rules of Syntax, 411—543</b> .....                | 114 |
| I.—SUBSTANTIVES IN APPPOSITION, 411.....             | 114 |
| II.—ADJECTIVE AND SUBSTANTIVE, 414.....              | 115 |
| III.—THE ARTICLE, 424.....                           | 115 |
| IV.—PERSONAL PRONOUNS, 429.....                      | 116 |
| V.—RELATIVE AND ANTECEDENT, 435.....                 | 119 |
| VI.—SUBJECT NOMINATIVE, 441.....                     | 120 |
| VII.—NOMINATIVE ABSOLUTE, 444.....                   | 122 |
| VIII.—VERB AND ITS SUBJECT, 449.....                 | 124 |
| IX.—THE PREDICATE SUBSTANTIVE, 458.....              | 125 |
| X.—OBJECT OF A VERB, 460.....                        | 125 |
| XI.—OBJECTIVE AFTER A PREPOSITION, 469.....          | 126 |
| XII.—PREPOSITIONS AFTER CERTAIN WORDS, 475.....      | 128 |
| XIII.—THE POSSESSIVE CASE, 479.....                  | 130 |
| XIV.—SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD, 486.....                      | 132 |
| XV.—INFINITIVE MOOD, 492.....                        | 133 |
| XVI.—CONSTRUCTION OF PARTICIPLES, 501.....           | 135 |
| XVII.—THE ORDER OF TIME, 514.....                    | 136 |
| XVIII.—CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS, 516.....             | 139 |
| XIX.—CONJUNCTIONS, 525.....                          | 140 |
| XX.—PREPOSITIONS, 540.....                           | 143 |
| XXI.—INTERJECTIONS, 542.....                         | 148 |
| <b>General Rule, 544</b> .....                       | 148 |
| <b>Ellipsis, 547</b> .....                           | 149 |
| Not admissible, 540.....                             | 150 |
| <b>Syntactical Parsing, Model of, 551</b> .....      | 151 |
| Promiscuous Exercises, 552.....                      | 152 |
| <b>Punctuation, 553</b> .....                        | 154 |
| <b>Capitals, 581</b> .....                           | 155 |
| <b>Composition, 583</b> .....                        | 159 |
| Construction of Sentences, 592.....                  | 161 |
| Exercises in Composition, 609.....                   | 163 |

## PART FOURTH.—PROSODY.

|                                 |     |
|---------------------------------|-----|
| <b>Elocution, 611</b> .....     | 171 |
| <b>Versification, 621</b> ..... | 172 |
| <b>APPENDIX</b> .....           | 174 |

## SUGGESTIONS TO TEACHERS.

A manual of English Grammar can give little more than the outlines of the science; and these, to be brought within reasonable compass, must be stated in very concise form. A fruitful source of failure and disappointment in the study of Grammar is found in the willingness of teachers to rest in the bare statement of the author, and to confine the instruction for the most part to the mastery by the pupil of the formal definitions and rules. These are but the framework, the foundation upon which to build.

Since it is the office of grammar to teach us how to write and speak correctly, manifestly that method of study, and those exercises, are most profitable which afford the largest and most careful practice, in writing and speaking—in the application of the rules and principles which the Grammar sets forth.

In presenting to the public this revised edition of a little work which has so long stood the test of practical use in the school-room, the following hints, as aids to its more successful teaching, are submitted, especially to the consideration of teachers of limited experience.

1. The first essential is *thorough preparation* by the teacher, involving familiarity with each subject, and with the scope and relation of the whole. We cannot teach better than we know; and this preparation involves not simply such a knowledge of Grammar as shall aid us ourselves in the correct use of language, but that fuller and more exhaustive study which will enable us to *adapt its teachings* to the comprehension of those who look to us for instruction.

- 2 Each new subject should be *carefully illustrated* before the pupil undertakes the task of committing to memory the formal definitions, in order that he may clearly apprehend its meaning, and that unnecessary obstacles may be removed.

3. *Copious blackboard illustrations* and examples should always accompany the lessons, especially giving judicious classifications of principles, divisions, and distinctions of the several subjects of study, and showing the relation of parts to each other.

Generally, there are three stages in every recitation:

(1.) *Brief review of the preceding lesson*, (if related to the current one,) tracing its connection and bearing.

(2.) *Recitation and thorough discussion* of the lesson of the day, the teacher at first eliciting any additional thoughts or illustrations the pupils have to give, and then enlarging as the case demands, until it is thoroughly comprehended. The teacher should not be contented with the simple fact that the pupil has recited a lesson verbatim; but will see to it, also, that he has an intelligent notion of what it is designed to teach.

Lessons should be assigned and explanations given suited rather to the least intelligent than to the brightest member of a class, and the recitation and instruction should reach the *individuals* of the class so far as may be practicable.

(3.) *Assigning the next day's lesson*, as before suggested.

This, it will be seen, in some degree goes over each lesson three times in three successive days, and should result in its mastery.

4. Any skillful study of English grammar must give special prominence to *practical exercises in composition*, applying the principles illustrated and enforced in the several lessons. The very *full and explicit directions* for such exercises accompanying each lesson in this manual, will not fail to commend themselves to the judicious teacher. They should be extended as the practical necessities of the class may seem to require.

5. Every teacher using this Manual should also be provided with a copy of the PRACTICAL GRAMMAR and of the *Analysis*, and should make use of the foot-notes to give further illustration and elaboration to subjects that may seem to need it.

6. It is recommended that the Manual of "ANALYSIS, PARSING, AND COMPOSITION" be taken up *in connection with the Grammar*, in such portions as shall best illustrate and enforce the teachings of the several lessons, or aid in their practical application.

## INTRODUCTORY EXERCISES.

*Language*, either spoken or written, is made up of *words*. Each word is the *sign of some idea*; and by the proper selection and arrangement of words, we are enabled to express our ideas in a correct and intelligent manner.

By careful attention to the *meaning* and *relation* of words, as they are used in writing or speaking, we find that some are employed to express the *names* of things, others to indicate their *qualities*; some express *action* or *state* of some person or thing, and others are used in connection with these to point out the *time, place, manner, degree*, etc., of such action or state; some denote certain *relations* of things to each other, and others again are used chiefly to *connect* the different parts of a sentence to each other.

### CLASSIFICATION OF WORDS.

Thus, although there are many thousand words in the English language, all are classified grammatically into only *nine* different kinds, called *Parts of Speech*. A word is of one kind or another, according to its *use* in a sentence.

Let us now observe the *uses* and *names* of the different kinds of words in the following

SENTENCE.—“The boy rolled a round stone upon the floor, and oh! how swiftly it did go.”

[\*.\* The teacher will write this sentence on the blackboard.]

Q. Is there any *person* named in this sentence?

Q. Is there any *place* named?

Q. Is there any *thing* named?

Q. What, then, are the words “boy,” “floor,” and “stone?”

Ans. They are *names*.

Mention other names:

- Of things you can *see*,
- Of things you can *hear*,
- Of things you can *think of*.

In Grammar, names are called **Nouns** or **Substantives**.

Q. What, then, is a *noun*?

Ans. A **noun** is the name of *any person, place, or thing* (36).

[Exercise the pupil on nouns by asking him to **write** a number on the slate or blackboard; also by giving him sentences in which they occur, and requiring him to point them out. For Exercises see page 7. Do the same with the **other Parts of Speech**, as they are defined.]

Q. What word is before *boy* in this sentence?—before *round stone*?

Q. Why, then, is "the" put before "boy?" (94.)

Q. Why is "a" put before "round stone?" (93.)

Q. Can you give other nouns and put these little words *a* or *the* before them?

[Let the pupil turn to page 19 (Exercises) and prefix these words, in the same way, to the words in the list, beginning with "chair."]

Q. What word instead of *a* do you put before the word "owl?"—Does this word mean the same as *a*?

Q. Can you tell the difference between *a* man and *the* man?

Q. What are these words "the" and "a," and what do they show? Ans. They are **Articles**, and show the manner in which the nouns "boy" and "stone" are used.

Q. What, then, is an *article*?

Ans. An **article** is a word put before a noun to show the manner in which it is used. [Lesson 9.] For Exercises see page 19.

Q. What word is before "stone?"

—What *kind* of stone is it?—Mention other kinds of stones.

Write twenty other nouns, and put before each of them some word to tell the *kind*.

[In the Exercises, page 21, let the pupil point out the adjectives.]

Q. What are these words called that tell what kind of thing? (See 102.)

Q. What, then, is an *adjective*? [Write the definition.]

Q. In the part of the sentence, "It did go swiftly," *what* "did go?"

Q. For what, then, is the word "it" used in this sentence? (It is used *instead of the noun* "stone.")

Words used *instead of nouns* are named **Pronouns**, (127.)

Q. What, then, is a pronoun? [Write the definition.]

Q. Can you read the sentence, "Give me the pears you bought of him; I want them," and put **nouns** in the place of the words "me," "you," "him," and "them?"

Q. Look again at the sentence; what did the boy do?

Q. What is said of the stone? (Ans. It *did go* upon the floor.)

Q. What, then, does the word "rolled" tell us of?

Ans. The *action* of the boy.

Q. What does "did go" tell us of?

Ans. The *state* of the stone after the boy rolled it.

[For other Exercises, see page 23.]

Words of this kind, such as "rolled," and "did go," are named **Verbs**. [Put the definition on the blackboard.]

The *subject of a verb* is that of which the verb tells or affirms something. Thus, in the sentence, "boy" is the *subject* of the verb "rolled," and "it" (standing for stone) is the *subject* of the verb "did go."

Q. What, then, is a *verb*?

Ans. A **verb** is a word or words used to express the act, being, or state of its subject; as I *write*; he *exists*; time *flies*. [Exercises, page 40.]

Take the list of nouns, (page 11, Exercises) and tell something of each. **Write** out the sentences.

Q. How did the stone go?

Q. What does "swiftly" tell us?

Ans. The manner in which the stone "did go."

Q. If you say "the stone did go *very* swiftly," what does the word "very" do?

Ans. It modifies the meaning of the word "swiftly."



Q. What would "very" here tell us? *Ans.* A *circumstance* about the motion of the stone. It did go *very* swiftly.

Q. If you were to say "a *very* round stone," what would "very" be used for? *Ans.* To modify the adjective "round."

Words of this kind, such as "swiftly" and "very," are named *Adverbs*.

Q. What, then, is an *adverb*? (*See 293.*)

Point out the adverbs on page 82, Exercise II.

Q. What is the use of the word "upon" in the sentence?

*Ans.* It shows the *relation* between the "floor" and "rolled."

Q. If you add to the sentence so that the latter part will read "how swiftly it did go under the table," what relation does the word "under" show? *Ans.* The relation of the verb "did go" to the noun "table."

Words of this kind are named *Prepositions*. (*303.*)

Q. What, then, is a *preposition*?

Q. This sentence has two parts *connected* by one word. Name the parts. *Ans.* (1.) "The boy rolled a round stone upon the floor." (2.) "Oh! how swiftly it did go!"

Q. What word joins these two parts of the sentence?

Words that join words and sentences are called *Conjunctions*.

Q. What, then, is a conjunction? *Ans.* A *conjunction* is a word which connects words, phrases, or sentences. (*311.*)

Q. What is "oh!" here? *Ans.* It is a word expressing surprise at seeing the stone rolling.

Such words are called *Interjections*. (*317.*)

Write five sentences containing interjections.

Q. How many kinds of words are there in this sentence?

*Ans.* Nine.

Q. What are they called in English Grammar?

*Ans.* They are called *Parts of Speech*. (*31.*)

Q. Can all the words in our language be classed under these nine *Parts of Speech*? *Ans.* Yes.

2. What are you going to learn by studying Grammar?

Ans. The way to put these Parts of Speech properly together, so as to speak and write the English language correctly.

NOTE.—Let the teacher take other appropriate sentences and go over them in the same way until the pupils can readily tell the Parts of Speech in their simplest uses.

### *Examples of the Parts of Speech.*

The teacher may now write upon the blackboard a sentence with illustrations, similar to the following:

Carlo was a noble dog; he swam bravely towards the shore; but alas! he was drowned.

1. *Noun* ..... as, wheat, dogs, etc.... Carlo (was)
2. *Article* ..... a, an, the ..... a
3. *Adjective* ... first, larger, etc.... noble (dog)
4. *Pronoun* ... I, they, who, etc.... he
5. *Verb* ..... walks, has gone, etc. swam
6. *Adverb* ..... here, largely, etc.... bravely
7. *Preposition*. on, from, into, etc. towards (the shore)
8. *Conjunction*. and, both, or, etc. but
9. *Interjection*. oh! ah! etc. .... alas! (he was drowned.)

[Write upon the blackboard the **definition** of each of the **parts of speech**, in a series of lessons, and illustrate each fully—the pupil committing the definition *thoroughly* to memory.]

After an exercise like the foregoing, it may be profitable to **build up a sentence**, by successive additions of words, to illustrate the different **parts of speech**, and to exercise the pupil in discriminating the use of words in simple compositions.

Commence with some **noun**, as “birds,” and, by suitable questions, let the pupils add successive elements, *e.g.*, What part of speech is this?

State something a bird *does* or *can do*. [Sing.] “What part of speech is *sing*?”

\*.\* Teacher or pupil **writes** the sentence, “Birds sing.”

Put before it some word to tell the *kind* of birds. [Question as before.]

*How* or *when*, etc., do birds sing?

*Where* do birds sing? [In the grove.]

What word joins "grove" to the rest of the sentence, and shows *relation* between them?

So proceed to *develop* a sentence, somewhat as in the preceding exercises we discussed Parts of Speech in the one there given.

### *Preliminary Definitions.*

The simplest form of language is a *word*, as a name or sign.

That *for which it stands* is called an *idea*, that is, an image or picture of something in the mind, something that the *mind* knows.

Inverting this order, we have the following:

An object, or a quality, or the doing of something, or the manner, etc., in which something is done, is *perceived* by the mind.<sup>1</sup>

Such perception or consciousness is called an *idea* of the object, quality, act, manner, etc.

A spoken or written sign, standing for such idea, is called a *word*.

When we are conscious of some *relation* to each other of two or more ideas, we are said to think. The operation of the mind is called *thought*, and the words when put together are called a *phrase*; as, *Green grass*.

We may *affirm*—state our opinion or judgment—of two ideas, affirming or denying one or the other; as, *Grass is green*.—*Ice is not cold*. The expression of such judgment is called a *proposition*, and the words taken together make a *sentence*.<sup>2</sup>

A *word* is the sign of an idea; as, *book, sweet, write*.

A *phrase* is the simplest expression of a thought not affirmed. (335.)

A *proposition* is a single statement or affirmation. (332.)

A *sentence* is the expression of a proposition. (333.)

A *clause* is a dependent part of a sentence, containing a subject and a verb. (334.)

\*\* Any expression containing the *verb* in any of its moods is a *clause* or a *sentence*, and not a *phrase*.

### Sentences.

Every sentence consists of *two parts*, the subject and the predicate. (340-349.)

The *subject* is the word or words standing for that of which we speak.

The *predicate* is the statement or affirmation which we make of the subject.

The following are examples;

*Subject. Predicate.*

Birds..sing.

Sugar..is sweet.

The bad boy..tore his book.

The lame man..limps on his lame leg.

The boy who studies..will improve rapidly.

The fear of the Lord..is the beginning of wisdom.

The stars which we see at night..disappear when the sun rises.

NOTE.—Pupils should be thoroughly exercised in distinguishing between the *subject* and the *predicate*, until they can readily name each in any sentence whose meaning they can understand. *All* that is not subject is predicate, and all that is not predicate is subject.

The very first step in the analysis of sentences is to inculcate the necessity of separating *every* sentence into *two parts*—that of which the statement or affirmation is made, and that which is said of it.

1. The **substantive** in the subject (nominative case) is of itself often *insufficient*, and the fitness of the predicate is frequently determined by the limiting words ; as,

A *generous* man.... will be *honored*.

A *selfish* man.... will be *despised*.

2. Similarly, although the **verb** is the principal word in the predicate, it may be so *modified by other words*, that, with the same verb, the sense of the predicate shall be essentially changed.

(1.) By an **adverb** ; as,

The man.... walked *slowly*.

The man.... walked *rapidly*

(2.) By an **objective** ; as,

He.... wore a *hat*.

He.... wore a *cap*.

(3.) By an **attribute** ; as,

It.... tastes *sweet*.

It.... tastes *sour*.

3. With the **same verb**, the predication of **different subjects** may be satisfied by a change of the **subordinate** word.

Our *friends*.... treat us with *kindness*.

Our *enemies*.... treat us with *contempt*.

\* \* For further discussion and exercises, see "Analysis."

NOTE TO TEACHERS.—The preceding exercises are intended only as suggestions for oral lessons, which the skillful teacher will extend or modify at pleasure. The pupil should not have any part of this Introduction assigned as a task to be committed to memory: the text in the "Lessons" furnishes ample material for that, after the principles it embodies have been carefully set before the mind of the learner.

# ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

[REFERENCES.—The figures enclosed in parentheses in the text refer to the sections in this grammar. The foot-notes, corresponding with the small index figures in the text, refer to the sections of the Analytical and Practical English Grammar (A. & P. Gr.), and to the Manual on Analysis, Parsing, and Composition (Anal.), belonging to this series.]

## LESSON 1.—Definition and Division.

[Commit Definitions and Rules accurately to memory.]

**1. Language** is the means by which we express our thoughts.

**2.** The expression of our thoughts by *sounds* is *Spoken Language*; the expression of them by *letters* (**7**) is *Written Languages* (**12**), or *Printed Language* (**13**).

**3. English Grammar** is the art of speaking and writing the English Language with propriety.

**4.** It is divided into four parts; namely, *Orthography*, *Etymology*, *Syntax*, and *Prosody*.

**5. Orthography** treats of *letters* (**6**); **Etymology** of words (**27**); **Syntax** of sentences (**331**); and **Prosody** of *elocution* and *verification* (**610**).

**QUESTIONS.**—What is Language? What is Spoken Language? Written? What is English Grammar? Into how many parts is it divided? Mention them. What does Orthography treat of? Etymology? Syntax? Prosody?



## PART FIRST. — ORTHOGRAPHY.

## LESSON 2.—Letters and Syllables.

**6. Orthography** treats of letters and the proper mode of combining them into syllables and words.

**7.** A *letter* is a mark or character used in *forming a word*, and denotes a sound of the human voice, as b-a-d bad, g-o go, p-u-p-i-l pupil.

**8.** Some letters represent *several* sounds, as *a* in able, cedar, fall, mat; *c* in cedar, call.

**9.** Sometimes *two or more letters* are used to represent a sound, as *ch* in child, *ough* in though, *sh* in finish.

**10.** When a letter in a word is not used in pronunciation, it is called a *silent* letter, as *h* in hour, *e* in peace.

**11.** There are about *forty Elementary Sounds* in the English Language, represented in writing or in print by twenty-six letters called the Alphabet:

**12. Written Letters.—Capitals.**

*A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z*

*Written Letters.—Small.*

*a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z.*

**13. ROMAN LETTERS—CAPITALS.**

*A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z*

*Roman Letters.—Small.*

*a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z.*

*ITALIC LETTERS.—CAPITALS.*

*A B C D E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V W X Y Z*

*Italic Letters.—Small.*

*a b c d e f g h i j k l m n o p q r s t u v w x y z.*

REMARKS.—*Italic* letters are generally used for *emphasis*.

14. **Letters** are either *Vowels* or *Consonants*.
15. A *Vowel* makes a free, full sound of itself.
16. A *Consonant* cannot be fully sounded without a vowel.
17. The *Vowels* are *a e i o u*; also, *w* and *y*, not before another vowel sounded in the same syllable as in *law*, *boy*.
18. All the other letters are *Consonants*; also, *w* and *y*, before a vowel sounded in the same syllable, as in *war*, *youth*.
19. A *Diphthong* is the union of two vowels in one sound, as *ou* in *out*, *oi* in *oil*.
20. A *Triphthong* is the union of three vowels in one sound, as *eau* in *beauty*.
21. A *Syllable* is a distinct sound, uttered by one impulse of the voice, and represented by one or more letters, as *farm*, *ea-gle*, *a-e-ri-al*.
22. A word of *one syllable* is a *Monosyllable*, as *man*.
23. A word of *two syllables* is a *Dissyllable*, as *man-ly*.
24. A word of *three syllables* is a *Trisyllable*, as *man-li-ness*.
25. A word of *four or more syllables* is a *Polysyllable*, as *Em-i-gra-tion*, *In-sub-or-di-na-tion*.
26. **Spelling** is the art of expressing **words** by their proper **letters**.<sup>1</sup>

**QUESTIONS.**—What is Orthography? What is a letter? When is a letter called silent? How many Elementary Sounds are there in English? How many Letters are there? How are they divided? What is a Vowel?—a Consonant? Name the Vowels. When are *w* and *y* vowels? When Consonants? What is a Diphthong? A Triphthong? What is a Syllable? What is a Word of one Syllable called? Of two? Of three? Of four or more? What is Spelling?

---

<sup>1</sup> Anal. & Practical Grammar—51-76.

**NOTE TO TEACHERS.**—Before a new lesson is assigned to the class, its subject-matter should be carefully exemplified by **oral exercises**, familiar questions, and **blackboard illustrations**, so that its scope may be fully apprehended—not for the purpose of relieving the pupil of its labor, but of making it possible for him to perform it understandingly. Use additional questions as they may suggest themselves; and in the reviews, let the pupil **recite topically without** questions.

## PART SECOND.—ETYMOLOGY.

### LESSON 3.—Division of Words.

**27. Etymology** treats of the **classes of words**, and the changes of the form of words, by inflection and by derivation.

**28. Inflection** is the change of form or termination which a word undergoes to express the different relations of person, gender, number, case, comparison, voice, mood, tense, etc.; as

He sees great men; a greater man saw him.

**29. Derivation** is the change in a word from its simple primitive word; <sup>2</sup> thus, *manly*, *manhood*, *mankind* are derived from “*man*.”

**30. Words**, in respect to their *meaning* and *use*, are divided into nine classes, called

### PARTS OF SPEECH.

**31.** The names of the **parts of speech** in our language are *Noun*, *Article*, *Adjective*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Conjunction*, and *Interjection*.

**32.** Of these, the *Noun*, *Pronoun*, and *Verb* and some *Adjectives* and *Adverbs* are inflected (**111, 296**).

**33.** In grammar, the *inflection* of Nouns, Pronouns, and Verbs is usually treated of as “*Accidents*” (**45, 132, 202**).

**34. Parsing** is the taking of the words of a sen

---

<sup>2</sup> Analysis, Parsing & Composition.—**225-242**.

tence separately to tell **to what class** each belongs, and then describing it (324).

**35. ILLUSTRATION.**—"The bad boy strikes John" is a sentence. Each of these words is a *part of speech*, and holds a certain relation to other words in the sentence. We parse these words when we tell what parts of speech they are and describe them. Thus, *the* is an *article* and belongs to *boy*; *bad* is an *adjective* qualifying or describing *boy*; *boy* is a common noun, and is the subject of *strikes*; *strikes* is a verb, and tells what the boy does. *John* is a noun, and is the subject of the verb *strikes*.

**QUESTIONS.**—What does Etymology treat of? What is Inflection? What is Derivation? What are the nine classes of words called? Name them Which are inflected? Under what other name is the Inflection of Words treated of? What is Parsing? What does *etc.* (28) mean?

## LESSON 4.—Nouns.

[Review the two preceding Lessons, and answer the questions.]

**36.** A **Noun** is the name of any person, place, or thing; as, *John, London, book.*

**37.** Nouns are either *Common* or *Proper*.

**38.** A **Common Noun** is a name applied to all things of the same sort; as, *boy, city, river.*

**39.** A **Proper Noun** is the name applied to an **individual** person or thing only; as, *John, London, the Ohio.*

**40.** A **Noun** is also called a **Substantive**.

**41.** A **Substantive** is a noun, or any word or part of a sentence used as a noun.

Thus: The *man* has gone. *He* reads. *To read well* requires much practice. *That industry leads to success* needs no proof. These substantives are subjects of the several verbs "has gone," "reads," "requires," "needs." (See Lesson 39.)

**42. ILLUSTRATION.**—1. Every thing of which a person can speak, hear, or think, has a name; that name in grammar is called a *noun*. Names *common* to all things of the same sort or class, are called **Common Nouns**; as, *man, woman, day, river, city*.

2. Names applied only to individuals of a sort or class, and not common to all, are called **Proper Nouns**; as, *John, Friday, Thames, London*. Common nouns, then, distinguish sorts or classes; *Proper* nouns distinguish individuals. Thus, the noun "*Man*" is the name of a class or species, and is applied equally to all, or is *common* to all the individuals in that class. But "*John*" is a name that belongs only to certain individuals of that class, and not to others; it is therefore not *Common* but *Proper*.

3. A word that makes sense after an *article* (**91**), or the phrase *speak of*, is a noun; *A man*; *I speak of money*.

### Observations.

**43.** Common nouns are divided into several classes, such as

1. **Class names**; as, *book, scholar*.
2. **Collective** nouns, or nouns of multitude; as, *people*.
3. Names of **materials**; as, *iron*.
4. Names of **measures**; as, *foot, yard*.
5. **Abstract** {
  1. Names of qualities; as, *goodness*.
  2. Names of actions; as, *flight*.
  3. Names of states; as, *sleep*.

**44.** Names of **actions** derived from verbs, are sometimes called **verbal** nouns; as, *reading, writing*, etc.

**45.** The **Accidents** of Nouns are *Person, Gender, Number, and Ca.* (**33, 28.**) [APPENDIX IV, 1.]

NOTE.—These accidents belong also to personal and relative pronouns (**132**).

**QUESTIONS.**—What is a noun? How many kinds of nouns are there? What is a common noun? What is a proper noun? What part of speech are names of things? What is a collective noun?—an abstract noun?

—a verbal noun? Are these nouns proper or common? What Accidents belong to nouns?

## EXERCISES.

[Point out the **nouns** in the following sentences; say why they are nouns. Tell whether they are **proper** or **common**, and why. Exercises of this kind may be taken from any book.]

The table and chairs in this room belong to Robert.—The houses and streets in New York are larger than those in Albany.—The principal cities in the State of New York, are New York, Brooklyn, Albany, Rochester, and Buffalo.—Wheat, corn, rye, and oats, are extensively cultivated.—Apples, pears, cherries, plums, and other fruits abound.—George is older than John; they both study arithmetic and grammar.—No man can serve two masters.—Knowledge is the treasure of the mind.—The proof of the pudding is in the eating.—Use soft words and hard arguments.—God tempers the wind to the shorn lamb.

[Write a list of all the **nouns** in your reading lesson.

Write additional sentences, taking care in all instances to begin **proper** nouns with a **capital** letter. (12.)]

## LESSON 5.—Person.

[Review the three preceding Lessons, and answer the questions.]

**46. Person**, in grammar, denotes the distinction of a noun or pronoun to denote the speaker, the person or thing spoken to, or the person or thing spoken of.

**47.** The persons are three, *First*, *Second*, and *Third*.

**48.** A noun or a pronoun is in the **first** person, when it denotes the **speaker** or **writer**; as,

"I Paul have written it."—"We are ready to go."

**49.** A noun or a pronoun is in the **second** person, when it denotes **something spoken to**; as,

"Thou, God, seest me."—"You may go, boys."



**50.** A noun or a pronoun is in the **third** person, when it denotes **something spoken of**; as,

"*Truth is mighty.*"—" *The dog followed me.*"

**51.** The *first* and *second* persons can belong only to nouns denoting individuals, or things regarded as individuals, because such only can speak or be spoken to. The *third* person may belong to all nouns, because every individual or object may be spoken of.

**52. ILLUSTRATION.**—*Person* makes no change either in the meaning or the form of a noun, but simply denotes the **manner in which it is used**. Moreover, as the name of the speaker or of the person spoken to, is seldom expressed (the pronoun *I* or *thou* being used in its stead), a noun is very rarely in the first or the second person.<sup>1</sup>

### EXERCISES.

[In the following exercises point out the nouns and pronouns (**126**), and tell their persons.]

The teacher said to Jane, I am pleased with your progress.  
—Thou art the man.<sup>1</sup>—John, where are you going?—  
Mary, does James study grammar?—We, the people of the  
State, do ordain.—Go along, Joseph.—The earth is a  
round ball.—Earth and sky! how beautiful ye are.—  
Man is the servant of God.—Hence! home! ye idle  
creatures!—Gazing upon the same moon that smiles for  
you, the Indian lover wooed his mate.

**QUESTIONS.**—What does person denote? How many persons are there? When is a noun in the first person? When in the second? When in the third? To what sort of nouns do the first and the second persons belong? Why? To what does the third belong? Why? Does person make any difference in the meaning or the form of the noun? What then does it denote? Is the name of the speaker, or the person spoken to, often mentioned? What words are used instead of them?

## LESSON 6.—Gender.

[Review the two preceding Lessons, and answer the questions.]

**53. Gender** is the distinction of nouns and pronouns **with regard to Sex**. There are three genders, the *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

**54.** Nouns and pronouns denoting **males** are **Masculine**; as, *man, boy—king, lion—I—he*.

**55.** Nouns and pronouns denoting **females** are **Feminine**; as, *woman, girl—queen, lioness—I—she*.

**56.** Nouns and pronouns denoting **neither males nor females** are **Neuter**; as, *books, houses, it*.

**57.** The masculine and feminine genders of nouns are distinguished in **three** ways—

1. By **different** corresponding **words**; as,

| <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Feminine.</i> | <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Feminine.</i> | <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Feminine.</i> |
|-------------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| Bachelor          | maid             | Gentleman         | lady             | Papa              | mamma            |
| Beau              | belle            | Hart              | roe              | Ram, buck         | ewe              |
| Boy               | girl             | Horse             | mare             | Samuel            | Sarah            |
| Brother           | sister           | Husband           | wife             | Sir               | madam            |
| Buck              | doe              | He                | she              | Son               | daughter         |
| Bull              | cow              | King              | queen            | Stag              | hind             |
| Colt              | filly            | Jupiter           | Juno             | Sloven            | slattern         |
| Drake             | duck             | Man               | woman            | Steer             | heifer           |
| Earl              | countess         | Lad               | lass             | Swain             | nymph            |
| Father            | mother           | Lord              | lady             | Uncle             | aunt             |
| Friar             | nun              | Master            | mistress         | Wizard            | witch            |
| Gander            | goose            | Nephew            | niece            | Youth             | maiden           |

\*\* Some words of this class are compounded by prefixing another distinguishing word; as,

| <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Feminine.</i> | <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Feminine.</i> |
|-------------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| Landlord          | landlady         | Stepson           | stepdaughter     |
| Schoolmaster      | schoolmistress   | Peacock           | peahen           |
| Grandfather       | grandmother      |                   |                  |

2. By a **difference of termination**; as,

| <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Feminine.</i> | <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Feminine.</i> |
|-------------------|------------------|-------------------|------------------|
| Abbot             | abbess           | Duke              | duchess          |
| Actor             | actress          | Emperor           | empress          |
| Administrator     | administratrix   | Enchanter         | enchantress      |
| Ambassador.       | ambadress        | Executor          | executrix        |
| Arbiter           | arbitress        | Governor          | governess        |
| Author            | authoress        | Heir              | heiress          |
| Augustus          | Augusta          | Hero              | heroine          |
| Baron             | baroness         | Host              | hostess          |
| Benefactor        | benefactress     | Jew               | jewess           |
| Bridegroom        | bride            | Lion              | lioness          |
| Count             | countess         | Marquis           | marchioness      |
| Deacon            | deaconess        | Mayor             | mayoress         |
| Negro             | Negress          | Songster          | songstress       |
| Patron            | patroness        | Sorcerer          | sorceress        |
| Peer              | peeress          | Sultan            | sultana          |
| Poet              | poetess          | Tiger             | tigress          |
| Priest            | priestess        | Traitor           | traitress        |
| Prince            | princess         | Tutor             | tutress          |
| Prophet           | prophetess       | Votary            | votaress         |
| Shepherd          | shepherdess      | Widower           | widow            |

3. By a **distinguishing word** prefixed; as,

|             | <i>Masculine.</i> | <i>Feminine.</i>   |
|-------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| Sparrow     | Cock sparrow      | Hen sparrow        |
| Goat        | He goat           | She goat           |
| Servant     | Man servant       | Maid servant       |
| Child       | Male child        | Female child       |
| Descendants | Male descendants  | Female descendants |
| Wilson      | Mr. Wilson        | Mrs. Wilson        |
|             | Master Wilson     | Miss Wilson        |

**Observations.**

**58.** Some nouns denote either a male or a female as parent, servant, neighbor. Such are said to be of the *common gender*.

**59.** Some masculine nouns have *no corresponding feminine*; as baker, brewer; and some feminine nouns have *no corresponding masculine*; as, laundress, seamstress.

**60.** Some nouns, generally of the *neuter* gender, have masculine or feminine pronouns when *personified*; that is, when the thing they represent is considered to have life; as, "The *sun* is bright, but how does *he* make the day?"

"The *ship* was admired as *she* sailed past."<sup>1</sup>

**61.** The names of animals of inferior size, or whose sex is not known, are often considered *neuter*, and are followed by the neuter pronoun; as, "The cat caught a mouse and ate it."

**QUESTIONS.**—What is gender? How many genders are there? What nouns are said to be masculine? What feminine? What neuter? How are the masculine and feminine genders of nouns distinguished? When a noun denotes either a male or a female, what gender is it sometimes said to be? Name some nouns that have no corresponding gender. When is a noun, generally neuter, personified? The names of what animals are often considered of the neuter gender?

### EXERCISES.

[1. In the preceding lists, tell the feminine of each masculine noun, and the masculine of each feminine. Tell the gender of each noun and pronoun in the exercises. Lesson 4 and 5.

2. Tell the part of speech and gender of the following words; thus, *house*, a noun, neuter; *boy*, a noun, masculine, etc.]

House, boy, stone, boot, cow, father, mother, sister, brother, daughter, aunt, nephew, niece, uncle, shepherd, paper, pen, ink, parent, neighbor, friend, lion, widow, baron, negro, hero, horse, tree, bird, mouse, fly, landlord, bride, songster, madam, etc.

### LESSON 7.—Number.

[Review the three preceding Lessons, and answer the questions.]

**62. Number** is that property of a noun by which it expresses **one**, or **more than one**.

<sup>1</sup> A. & P. Gr.—A20, 1046.

**63.** Nouns have **two** numbers, the *Singular* and the *Plural*. The **Singular** denotes *one*; as, *book, tree, man*; the **Plural**, *more than one*; as, *books, trees, men*.

**64.** The **Plural** is commonly formed by adding **s** to the singular: as, singular *book*, plural *books*.

### Special Rules.

**65. RULE 1.** Nouns ending in *s, sh, ch* soft, *z, x, or o* form the plural by adding **es**: as, *Miss, Misses; brush, brushes; match, matches; topaz, topazes; fox, foxes; hero, heroes*.

**66. Exceptions.**—Nouns ending in *co, io, and yo*, and in *ch* sounding *k*, add **s** only; as, *cameo, cameos; folio, folios; monarch, monarchs*. Also *canto* as *cantos*; but other nouns in *o after a consonant* now commonly add **es**; as, *grotto, grottoes; tyro, tyroes*, etc.

**67. RULE 2.** (1) Nouns ending in *y* after a consonant change *y* into **ies** in the plural; as, *Lady, ladies*.

(2) Nouns ending in *y after a vowel*, follow the general rule; as, *Day, days*.

(3) Also, all **proper nouns** ending in *y*; as, the *Pompeys*, the *Tullys*.

**68. RULE 3.** Nouns ending in *f* or *fe*, change *f* or *fe* into **ves** in the plural; as, *Loaf, loaves; life, lives*.

**69. Exception.**—But *dwarf, scarf; brief, chief, grief; kerchief, handkerchief, mischief; gulf, turf, surf; fife, strife; proof, hoof, roof, reproof*, follow the general rule. Also nouns in *ff* have their plural in **s**; as, *muff, muffs; staff* has sometimes *staves*.

**Remark.**—**Letters, marks, and figures** are made plural by adding **'s**; as, "Dot your *i's* and cross your *t's*. Your *s's* are not well made. The **+** *'s* are between the 6's and 7's, and the **—** *'s* between the 4's and 5's."

**Observations.<sup>1</sup>**

**70.** Some nouns form the plural *irregularly*. They are the following:—

| <i>Singular.</i>                           | <i>Plural.</i> | <i>Singular.</i>         | <i>Plural.</i> |
|--|----------------|--------------------------|----------------|
| Man  | men            | Tooth                    | teeth          |
| Woman                                      | women          | Goose                    | geese          |
| Child                                      | children       | Mouse                    | mice           |
| Foot                                       | feet           | Penny ( <i>a coin</i> )  | pennies        |
| Ox   | oxen           | Penny ( <i>a value</i> ) | pence          |
| <i>Singular.</i>                           | <i>Plural.</i> |                          |                |
| Brother ( <i>one of the same family</i> )  | brothers       |                          |                |
| Brother ( <i>one of the same society</i> ) | brethren       |                          |                |
| Sow or swine                               | sows or swine  |                          |                |
| Die ( <i>for gaming</i> )                  | dice           |                          |                |
| Die ( <i>for coining</i> )                 | dies           |                          |                |

Most *compound words* pluralize the first part, as,

|                     |                      |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| Aid-de-camp         | aids-de-camp         |
| Court-martial       | courts-martial       |
| Cousin-german       | cousins-german       |
| Father-in-law, etc. | fathers-in-law, etc. |

**71.** Words from *foreign languages* sometimes retain their original plural. As a general rule, nouns in *um* or *on* have *a* in the plural; but *is*, in the singular, is changed into *es*; *ex* and *ix*, into *ices*; *us* into *i*;<sup>2</sup> as,

| <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> | <i>Sing.</i> | <i>Plur.</i> |
|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| Apex         | apices       | Crisis       | crises       |
| Automaton    | automata     | Magus        | magi         |
| Axis         | axes         | Mr.          | Messrs.      |

**72.** *Proper names* have the plural, only when they refer to a *race* or *family*; as, the *Stewarts*; or to several persons of the same name; as, the twelve *Cæsars*.<sup>3</sup>

**73.** Names of *metals*, *virtues*, *vices*, and *things weighed* or *measured*, are mostly *singular*; as, *gold*, *meekness*, *temperance*, *milk*.



**74.** Some nouns are *plural only*; as, *animals, bellows*.

**75.** Some are *alike* in both numbers; as, *deer, sheep, trout*.

**76.** Some nouns are plural in form; but in construction, either *singular* or *plural*; as, *amends, means, news, riches, pains*; and the names of sciences; as, *mathematics, ethics*, etc.

**77.** Some nouns are used in the singular form to denote a quantity or class of objects, as two *hundred*, the *horse* is useful to mankind. (99.)

**QUESTIONS.**—What is meant by number? How many numbers have nouns? What does the singular denote?—the plural? How is the plural commonly formed? When is the plural formed by adding *es*? How do nouns ending in *y* after a consonant, form the plural?—after a vowel?—nouns ending in *f* or *fe*? Proper nouns? When have proper nouns a plural? What nouns are mostly singular? Mention some nouns that are plural only. Some that are alike in both numbers. Some that are plural in form, but either singular or plural in construction. When is the article *a* or *an* not used?

### EXERCISES.

[1. Put the following words in the **plural**, and give the rule for forming it; thus, "*Chair*, plural *chairs*." RULE, "The plural is commonly formed, etc. (64); "*Fox*, plural *foxes*." RULE, "Nouns in *s, sh*," etc. (65).]

Chair, fox, table, cat, dog, horse, house, hand, finger, arm, boy, girl; dish, church, box, miss, sky, body, key, day, toy, leaf, knife, wife, loaf. An apple (96), a pear, a cherry, a bush, a church, a bell.

[2. Write the **singular** of the following plurals:]

Flies, boxes, leaves, brushes, knives, marshes, bays, tables, bushes, trees, dogs, ducks, geese, wives, duties, churches, matches, mice, days, keys, staves, horses, mules, cows, sheep, goats, etc.

[3. Tell the **plural** of the following **irregular** nouns:]

Man, woman, child, ox, tooth, foot, goose, penny, mouse; father-in-law, mother-in-law, court-martial, fisherman, washerwoman, cousin-german, etc.

[4. Tell the **gender** and the **number** of the following nouns: give the **plural** and the rule for forming it; thus, "House," a noun, neuter, singular; plural, "houses." "The plural is commonly formed," etc.]

House, boy, stone, boat, father, king, knife, aunt, emperor, governess, pen, lioness, baron, sister, brother, lord, box, bush, rush, goose, bachelor, doe, bride, fly, loaf, study, coach, toy, mouth, watch, hero, church, tree, way, wife, half, fish, table, mother, apple, cherry, star, sun, moon, planet, earth, sky, mountain, river, sea, etc.

[5. Write short sentences, each containing at least one of the nouns in the preceding list.]

### LESSON 8.—Cases of Nouns.

[Review the three preceding Lessons, and answer the questions.]

**78. Case** is the **state** or **condition** of a noun with respect to the other words in a sentence.

**79. Nouns** have **three cases**; the *Nominative*, *Possessive*, and *Objective*.

**80. The Nominative** case commonly expresses that of which something is said, or declared; <sup>1</sup> as,

The sun shines.      He is a scholar.

**81. The Possessive** case denotes that to which something belongs; <sup>2</sup> as, the lady's fan. (479.)

**82. The Objective** case denotes the object of some action in relation; <sup>3</sup> as. James assists Thomas; they live in Albany.

**83. The nominative** and *objective* cases of nouns are *alike in form*.

**84. The possessive** singular *is formed* by adding an *apostrophe* (') and *s*, to the nominative; as John's book.

<sup>1</sup> Anal.—145, 146. A. & P. Gr.—164. <sup>2</sup> Anal.—149.

<sup>2</sup> A. & P. Gr.—165,      <sup>3</sup> 166.

**85.** When the plural ends in *s*, the possessive is formed by adding an *apostrophe only*; as *Ladies' hats*.

#### INFLECTION OF NOUNS.

**86.** Nouns are thus declined:

|              | <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> | <i>Singular.</i> |   |
|--------------|------------------|----------------|------------------|---|
| <i>Nom.</i>  | Lady             | Ladies         | John             | — |
| <i>Poss.</i> | Lady's           | Ladies'        | John's           | — |
| <i>Obj.</i>  | Lady             | Ladies         | John             | — |

**87.** Proper names generally have no plural.

#### PARSING OF THE NOUN.

**88.** A noun is **parsed etymologically**, by telling its *gender*, *number*, and *case*; thus, "The *lady's* far is lost."

*Lady's*, a noun, *feminine*, in the *possessive singular*.

#### Observations.

**89.** When the nominative singular ends in *ss*, or letters of a similar sound, the *s* after the apostrophe is sometimes omitted, in order to avoid too close a succession of hissing sounds; as, "for goodness' sake;" "for conscience' sake." This however is seldom done, unless the word following begins with *s*; thus we do not say "the prince' feather," but the "prince's feather."

NOTE.—A noun in the possessive case **limits** the noun to which it is joined.

**90.** The *objective* case, with *of before it*, following another noun, is generally equivalent to the *possessive*; thus, "the rage of the tyrant" and "the tyrant's rage" mean the same thing. Sometimes, however, the meaning will be different.<sup>1</sup>

**QUESTIONS.**—What is case? How many cases have nouns? What does the nominative case express?—the possessive?—the objective? What two cases are alike? How is the possessive singular formed?—the possessive plural?

<sup>1</sup>A. & P. Gr.—176.

## EXERCISES.

## GENDER, NUMBER, AND CASE.

[Parse the following nouns by telling their gender, number and case ; thus, "*Father*," a noun, masculine, in the nominative singular.]\*

Father, mother, sister's husband, brother's wife, uncle's house, Tom's books, city, virtue's reward, brother's widow ; Washington the hero, the statesman, the father of his country ; carpenter, farmer, lawyer's fees, teacher's manual, scholar's assistant, ladies' gloves ; beans, peas, plums, cherries, houses. The farmer plants potatoes in his field. Flowers grow in the garden.

[Review the whole thoroughly from the beginning, answering accurately all the questions.]

## LESSON 9.—The Article.

**91.** An **Article** is a word put before a noun, to show the manner in which it is used.

**92.** There are two articles, **a** or **an**, and **the**.

**93.** **A** or **an** is called the **Indefinite Article**, because it shows that the noun is used **indefinitely**, and not limited to a particular person or thing ; as, *a king*, *an eagle*, meaning *any king*, *any eagle*.

**94.** **The** is called the **Definite Article**, because it shows that the noun is used **definitely**, and refers

\* In using the above exercises, it will save much time, which is all important, if the pupil be taught to say every thing belonging to the noun in the fewest words possible ; and always in the same order as above. For the same reason, the distinction of nouns into proper and common may be omitted. And as person has nothing to do with the *form* of a noun, but only with its *use*, and as nouns are almost always of the third person, the mention of person may be omitted, unless the noun is in the first or the second person. It will also be a profitable exercise for him to assign a reason for every part of his description ; thus, *Father*, a noun, because the *name* of an object ; *masculine*, because it denotes the *male sex* ; *singular*, because it denotes but *one* ; plural, *fathers*. RULE, "The plural is commonly formed by adding *s* to the singular."

to a particular person or thing; as, *the king*, meaning *some particular king*, known or described. [APPENDIX IV, 2.]

### Observations.

**95.** *A* is used *before a consonant*; *a house, a ripe apple*. Also before words beginning with *u* long, and *eu*, because they sound as if beginning with the consonant *y*: thus, *A unit, a use a eulogy*,—pronounced as if written, *a yunit, a yuse, a yeulogy*.

**96.** Instead of *a*, *an* is used before an adjective or noun, beginning with a *vowel* or a *silent h*; as, *an aged man, an acorn, an hour*.

**97.** *A* or *an* is used before the *singular* number only; *the*, before either the *singular or the plural*.

**98.** Generally, a noun *without an article* is taken in its *widest* sense, as, *Man* is mortal, meaning *All mankind*: Or, in an *indefinite* sense; as, *There are men* destitute of all shame, meaning *some men*.

**99.** *The* is sometimes put before a noun denoting *the species*; <sup>1</sup> as, *the oak; the lion*.

**100.** When an *article* and *adjective* are used with a noun, the article generally stands before the adjective; as, *a large eagle, the tame lion*.

### PARSING OF THE ARTICLE.

**101.** The article is parsed by stating whether it is **definite** or **indefinite**, and mentioning the **noun** to which it belongs; thus,

*A book.* *A* is an article, indefinite, and belongs to "*book*."

**QUESTIONS.**—What is an article? How many articles are there? What is *A* or *An* called? Why? What is *The* called? Why? What is *A* used before? What is *An* used before? In what sense is a noun without an article taken? How is the article parsed?

## EXERCISES.

Is it proper to say a man, or an man? and why?  
 a apple, or an apple? and why?  
 a house, or an house? and why?  
 a hour, or an hour? and why?

[Prefix the indefinite article in the proper form to the following words:]

(Chair, table, horse, cart, book, house, garden, bird, owl,  
 egg, ear, eye, tree, cow, unit, use, old man, young man, word,  
 book, pot, bench, open wagon, round stone, old hat, penny  
 trumpet, ice house, house, honor, hopeful boy, honest man.<sup>1</sup>

[Correct the Errors in the following examples, and give a reason for the change; parse the articles:]

An cup, an door, a apple, an pear, an hat, an wig, an eulogy,  
 a honor, an crow, a ostrich, an pen, a ugly beast, an pretty  
 beast, an pretty thing, an huge monster, a upper room, a ice  
 house, an nice house, an humorous poem, a open wagon, an  
 hard nut, a industrious boy, a honest man. The mankind  
 are divided into the different races. Farmers live in a  
 country. The lions roam in a forest.

[Write the singular of the plural nouns (Ex. 2, page 14), and prefix the indefinite article.]

## LESSON 10.—The Adjective.

**102. An Adjective** is a word used to **qualify** a substantive; as, A *good* boy; a *square* box; *ten* dollars. He is *poor*. To lie is *base*. That I said so is *true*.

\* \* For the word Substantive, see Lesson 4.

**103.** Adjectives may be *classified* as follows:

**104. I. Common adjectives**, denoting quality; as, good, large, sweet, etc.

**105. II. Numeral adjectives**, denoting quantity and number. Of these there are four kinds:

1. *Definite* numerals, denoting some exact number; as, *six* dollars, the *eighth* page. These are distinguished as

(a) **Cardinal**, which indicate *how many*; as, *one, two*. These are sometimes written in figures; thus, 1, 2, 3, 4.

(b) **Ordinal**, which indicate *which one of a number*; as, *first, second*, etc. Sometimes written, 1st, 2d, 3d, 4th, etc.

2. **Indefinite** numerals are such as do not denote any exact number; as, *few, many, several*.

3. **Distributive** numerals point out a number of objects individually; as, *each, every, either, neither*. These are also called *indefinite pronouns*. (See 171.)

4. Those denoting **quantity** as applied to materials; as, *much, little, some, any*.

**106. III. Circumstantial Adjectives** express some condition of time, place, nation, etc.; as, *daily bread, Eastern clime, American continent*.

Under this head may be included **proper** adjectives derived from nouns; as, *Roman, Grecian, Napoleonic*.

**107. IV. Participial** adjectives, consisting of participles or compounds of participles used as adjectives; as, *an amusing story, unmerited rebuke*. [See APPENDIX IV, 3.]

**108. ILLUSTRATIONS.**—The name of a thing, mentioned **without qualification**, brings before the mind only the idea of the thing itself. Thus, the word "horse," for example, may stand for any horse. But if we wish to describe or point out a **particular** horse more definitely, and to distinguish it from others of the same species, we **qualify** the term; <sup>1</sup> i. e., we connect with the name or noun a word denoting some property, or quality, or circumstance by which it may be known or distinguished; as, "a *little* horse;" "an *old* horse;" "a *black* horse;" "an *American* horse," etc. Words used for this purpose are called **Adjectives**. Sometimes several of these may be joined with the same noun; as, when we say, "a *little old black* horse;" "a *smooth white round* stone;" "the *good old* way."

---

<sup>1</sup> A. & P. Gr.—196.



\* \* In any phrase or sentence, the adjective qualifying a noun may generally be found by prefixing the expression, "What" or "What kind of," to the noun in the form of a question; as, What kind of a horse? What kind of a stone? What kind of a way? The word containing the answer to the question is an adjective.

### Observations.

**109.** *Other parts of speech*, when used to qualify or limit a noun, or pronoun, perform the part of *adjectives*, and should be parsed as such; as, A *gold* ring, a *he* bear, the *then* king, the *above* remark, etc. Sometimes an entire *phrase* or *clause* performs the office of an adjective; as, "The love of money." What love? "The boy *who studies*." What kind of boy?

**110.** *Adjectives* are often *used as nouns*; as, "God rewards the *good*, and punishes the *bad*." "The *virtuous* are the most happy." Adjectives thus used are plural: they denote more than one.

**QUESTIONS.**—What is an adjective? What are adjectives denoting number called? What is a numeral adjective? How many classes of numeral adjectives are there? What are the cardinal numbers? What do they express? What are the ordinal numbers? What do they express? When do nouns or other parts of speech become adjectives? Are adjectives ever used as nouns? Of what number are they considered?

### EXERCISES.

[1. In the following exercise, let the pupil first point out the **nouns**, and then the **adjectives**; and tell how he knows them to be so.]

A round table, a pretty dog, a little mouse, a low chair, a small book, a sharp knife, white paper, dirty books, ugly faces, a beautiful flower, a rich man, fresh fish, a wild horse, a short man, an old hat, a fierce dog, a good pen, a wise king, an honest man, tame rabbits, a fine day, a sweet apple, a long stick, a little handsome old woman, a thick square book, a large white cat, a new book, a clean white frock, a full cap, an empty mug, a warm room, a wet towel, a cold rainy night, a cloudy sky, windy weather, hard frost, deep snow.

The sky is bright.—It tastes sweet.—Snow is white.—Ice is cold.

[2. In the above exercises, let the pupil take each noun and prefix to it as many adjectives as he can think of, so as to make sense; as, for example, "table," *high table, low table, long table, etc., etc.*, and in reciting put the emphasis on the adjective.

3. Let him take each adjective, and add to it as many nouns as he can think of, so as to make sense; as, "round," a round *ball, a round hole, a round house, a round cake, etc.*, and put the emphasis on the noun.

4. **Write out** these exercises.]

## LESSON 11.—Comparison of Adjectives.

[Review the preceding Lesson, and answer the questions.]

**111.** Adjectives usually have three forms, called **degrees of comparison**; the *Positive, Comparative, and Superlative*.

**112.** The **Positive** expresses the quality simply; as, John is *tall*.

**113.** The **Comparative** expresses the quality in a higher degree in one object than another; as, James is *taller* than John.

**114.** The **Superlative** expresses the quality in the highest degree in one object compared with *two or more*; as, Joseph is the *tallest* of all.

**115.** Adjectives of *one syllable* form the comparative by adding *er* to the positive; and the superlative, by adding *est*; as, *sweet, sweeter, sweetest*.

**116.** Adjectives ending in *e* silent, drop *e* before *er* and *est*; <sup>1</sup> as, *large, larger, largest*.

**117.** Adjectives of *more than one syllable* are commonly compared by prefixing *more* and *most*; as, *beautiful, more beautiful, most beautiful*.

---

<sup>1</sup> A. & P. Gr.—66.

REMARK.—Some prefer to regard the words *more* and *most* as *adverbs*, modifying the adjective.

**118.** To these rules there are some exceptions. Adjectives of two syllables are sometimes compared by *er* and *est*; as, our *tenderest* cares; a *happier* state; and adjectives of one syllable are sometimes compared by prefixing *more* and *most*; as, *more wise*, *most fit*.<sup>1</sup>

**119.** A *lower degree* of comparison is expressed by prefixing *less* and *least* to the positive; as, *less* beautiful, *least* beautiful.<sup>2</sup>

### Observations.

**120.** *Dissyllables* ending in *le* after a mute, are generally compared by *er* or *est*; as, *able*, *abler*, *ablest*. After a consonant, *y* is changed into *i* before *er* and *est*; as, *dry*, *drier*, *driest*; *happy*, *happier*, *happiest*; *y* with a vowel before it, is not changed; as, *gay*, *gayer*, *gayest*.

**121.** Some adjectives form the *superlative* by adding *most* to the end of the word; as, *upper*, *uppermost*. So *undermost*, *foremost*, *hindmost*.

**122.** When the positive ends in a single consonant preceded by a single vowel, the consonant is doubled before *er* and *est*; as, *hot*, *hotter*, *hottest*.<sup>3</sup>

**123.** Some adjectives do *not admit of comparison*, viz:

1st. Such as denote *number*; as, *one*, *two*; *third*, *fourth*.

2d. — — — *figure* or *shape*; as, *circular*, *square*.

3d. — — — *posture*, or *position*; as, *perpendicular*, *horizontal*.

4th. Those of an absolute or *superlative* signification; as, *true*, *perfect*, *universal*, *chief*, *extreme*.<sup>4</sup>

### Adjectives compared irregularly.

**124.** Some adjectives are compared irregularly, as follows:

---

A. & P. Gr.—1216. 2217, 218. 360. 4223, 6.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

| <i>Positive</i>  | <i>Comparative.</i> | <i>Superlative</i> |
|------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| Good             | better              | best               |
| Bad, evil or ill | worse               | worst              |
| Little           | less                | least              |
| Much or many     | more                | most               |
| Late             | later               | latest or last     |
| Near             | nearer              | nearest or next    |
| Far              | farther             | farthest           |
| Fore             | former              | foremost or first  |
| Old              | older or elder      | oldest or eldest   |

**125.** *Much* is used to denote quantity; as, *much* corn, *much* money, *much* mischief; *many* to denote number; as, *many* men, *many* dollars. *Elder* and *eldest* are applied to *persons* only; *older* and *oldest*, to either *persons* or *things*.

**QUESTIONS.**—How many degrees of comparison are there? What does the positive denote?—the comparative?—the superlative? How are monosyllables compared?—words of more than one syllable?—dissyllables in *le* after a mute? in *y* after a consonant? What sort of adjectives double the final consonant before *er* or *est*? What adjectives are not compared? What adjectives are compared irregularly?

## PARSING THE ADJECTIVE.

**126.** Adjectives are parsed by stating their **class**, the **degree** of comparison (if compared), and the **nouns** which they qualify.

## EXERCISES.

[1. Point out the **adjectives** in the following Exercise: parse them; compare them; thus, a good father; "Good," an adjective, positive degree, qualifies "father," compared irregularly, *good*, *better*, *best*.

2. Point out the **nouns**, and tell their gender and number as directed; thus, "father," a noun, masculine, singular.]

A good father, a wiser man, a more beautiful girl, wild horses, young colts, a sweeter apple, the wisest prince, green trees, the honest farmers, the most virtuous people, the richer tradesman, the better scholar, the tallest girl, the finer sheep, large oranges, the merriest fellows, the old soldier, pretty dogs, an ugly calf, the tamest rabbits, the little mouse, the longest

stick, a wider table, a most excellent thing, the highest house, the most fruitful garden.

**NUMERALS.**—Four men, the fourth day, six days, the seventh day, 365 days, ten horses, the first time;—of four houses, the first is of wood; the second, of stone; the third and the fourth, of brick.

[**Turn back**, and go over the **adjectives** in the exercise, Lesson 10, in the same way.

2. In both exercises, change singular nouns into plural, and plural into singular; give the rule for the plural, and then read the phrase so changed; thus, *Father*, pl. *fathers*. "The plural is commonly formed by adding *s* to the singular," *good fathers*.

5. **Write Sentences** containing any of the adjectives in the preceding list, or any others you can think of. Teacher may give a new list to be used in the same way.]

## LESSON 12.—Pronouns.

[Review the two preceding Lessons, and answer the questions.]

**127. A Pronoun** is a word used instead of a noun; as, *John* is a good boy; *he* is diligent in *his* studies. The *boy who* studies will learn.

**128.** The word to which the pronoun relates, and for which it stands, is called its **antecedent**.

**129.** Sometimes a pronoun is used as a **substantive**<sup>1</sup> (**40**) in a general sense, without any antecedent expressed; as, *He* who studies will learn.

**130.** A pronoun sometimes has another pronoun for its antecedent; as, *You* and *I* attend to *our* duties.<sup>2</sup>

**131.** Pronouns may be divided into **four classes**; *Personal, Relative, Interrogative, and Adjective*.

**132.** The **Accidents** of Personal, Relative, and Interrogative pronouns, like those of nouns, are **Person, Gender, Number, and Case**. [APPENDIX IV, 4.]

**133. ILLUSTRATION.**—Generally pronouns are used to avoid the too frequent repetition of the nouns for which they stand.

Thus, instead of saying, *John* is a good boy ; *John* is diligent in *John's* studies ; we say, " *John* is a good boy ; *he* is diligent in *his* studies."

**134.** Some pronouns relate to nouns or substantives ; as, " *He* who studies will learn ;" others are used to ask questions ; as, " *What* did he say ?" and others are used, like adjectives, in connection with nouns ; as, " *My* book," " *That* horse." But, though a pronoun may indicate a noun, it does not express any quality of it as an adjective does.

### I.—Personal Pronouns.

**135. Personal Pronouns** are those which distinguish the person by their form. They are either *simple* or *compound*.

They stand *directly* for the nouns which they represent. The place of any personal pronoun may be supplied by its noun.

**136.** The **simple** personal pronouns are *I, thou, he, she, it* ; with their plurals, *we, ye* or *you, they*.

*One* d in a general sense to represent a person, may be regarded as a **personal** pronoun ; as, " *One* can never know, etc."

**137.** *I* is of the **first** person, and denotes the *speaker*.

**138.** *Thou* is of the **second** person, and denotes the *person spoken to*.

**139.** *He, she, it*, are of the **third** person, and denote the person or thing *spoken of*.

**140.** The personal pronouns are thus inflected:

| SINGULAR.          |      |       |      | PLURAL. |        |      |
|--------------------|------|-------|------|---------|--------|------|
|                    | Nom. | Poss. | Obj. | Nom.    | Poss.  | Obj. |
| 1. <i>m. or f.</i> | I    | mine  | me   | We      | ours   | us   |
| 2. <i>m. or f.</i> | Thou | thine | thee | You     | yours  | you  |
| 3. <i>masc.</i>    | He   | his   | him  | They    | theirs | them |
| 3. <i>fem.</i>     | She  | hers  | her  | They    | theirs | them |
| 3. <i>neut.</i>    | It   | its   | it   | They    | theirs | them |

*Observations.*

**141.** In proclamations, charters, editorial articles, and the like, *we* is frequently applied to *one person*; thus an editor writes, "*We* think."

**142.** In addressing persons, *you* is commonly put both for the singular and the plural, and has always a *plural* verb. *Thou* is used only in addresses to the Deity, or any important object in nature; or to mark special emphasis; or, in the language of contempt. The plural form, *ye*, is now but seldom used.

**143.** The pronoun *it* has a variety of uses:

1. *Regularly* as the neuter pronoun of the third person; as, Life is short; *it* should be improved.

2. As an *indefinite subject* of the verb *to be*, followed by a substantive in any person or number; as *It* is I. *It* is you. *It* is they; or *after* the verb in interrogative sentences; as, Who is *it*?

3. As an *introductory subject* before a verb followed by a substantive clause; <sup>1</sup> as, It is certain *that he will never mend*. It is wrong *to be idle*.

4. *Indefinitely* before impersonal verbs, (291); as, *It* hails, *it* rains, etc.

5. As a mere *expletive*; as, Come and trip *it* as you go.

**144.** The *possessive case* of the pronoun can not, like the possessive of the noun, be followed by the name of the thing possessed. Thus, we can say, *Mary's* book, but not "*hers* book;" and yet we can say equally well, "*It is Mary's*," or "*it is hers*." In both these last expressions, the name of the thing possessed is not expressed but implied.<sup>2</sup>

\* \* *Hers, its, ours, yours, theirs*, should never be written *her's, it's, our's, your's, their's*.

*Compound Personal Pronouns.*

**145.** The *compound personal pronouns* are

<sup>1</sup> Anal. 120, 121.

<sup>2</sup> A. & P. Gr. 241.



**Myself, thyself, himself, herself, itself;** with their plurals, *ourselves, yourselves, themselves*.

**116.** These pronouns are used, without change of form, in the *nominative* and the *objective* cases. They have no possessive. In the nominative they are *emphatic*, and are added to their respective personal pronouns or nouns, or are used instead of them; as, "I *myself* did it;" " *himself* shall come." In the objective they are *reflexive*, showing that the agent is also the *object* of his own act; as, "Judas went and hanged *himself*."

*Ourself* and *yourself* are used as compounds corresponding to *we* and *you* applied to individuals; as, "We *ourself* will follow." "You must do it *yourself*."

#### PARSING.

**147.** The personal pronouns may be parsed briefly thus; *I* is a pronoun of the first person, masculine (or feminine), in the nominative singular.

**QUESTIONS.**—What is a pronoun? How are pronouns divided? What is a personal pronoun? Why is it called *personal*? What are they? Decline the first—the second—the third? Of what person is *I*?—*thou*?—*he, she, it*? What does the first person denote?—the second?—the third? To what class do *myself, thyself*, etc., belong? In what cases are they used? How are they applied in the nominative?—in the objective? How is *you* applied?—*thou*?—*it*?

#### EXERCISES.

[1. Go over the following list of pronouns and tell their *person*. Go over them again and tell their *gender*; again, and tell their *number*; again, and tell their *case*; and lastly, tell their *gender, number, and case, together*.]

*I, thou, we, me, us, thine, he, him, she, hers, they, thee, them, its, theirs, you, her, ours, yours, mine, his, I, me, them, us, we, thou, thine, ye, ours, yours. Himself, yourselves, herself, themselves, ourself, yourself, itself.*

[2. Point out the **pronouns** in the following Exercise. Parse them by telling their person, gender, number, and case; thus, "*me*," a pronoun, first person, masculine, in the objective, singular.

3. Point out the **nouns** and parse them; the **adjectives** and parse them, compare and tell the degree of comparison.

4. Read over each sentence, and tell for what each of the pronouns stands; thus, *me* stands for the speaker; *you* for the person spoken to, etc.]

Give me the pears you bought of him; I like them better than the apple he bought; it was sour. She told us what we said to her, and they heard her. Put it on, will you? He likes them because they are sweet. Take them to John. I gave them to her. We will do it, if you wish. The men said they would do it. The girl said she did not know them. The boy thought he knew them. You and I went with them to meet her after she had seen him. He and I can do it, though you can not. James bought that book; it is therefore his, and not hers.

"Remember thy Creator in the days of thy youth." "Honor thy father and thy mother, that thy days may be long in the land which the Lord thy God giveth thee." "As ye would that others should do to you, do ye even so to them." "He who loves money more than honor, will rate it above honesty." "One that is perfectly idle will be perfectly weary." "Praise not the unworthy, though they roll in riches."

[5. Take any easy **reading lesson**, and go over it in the same way.

6. Read the preceding exercises, using **nouns instead of pronouns**.]

### LESSON 13.—II. Relative Pronouns.

[Review the preceding Lesson, and answer the questions.]

**148. A Relative Pronoun** is one that relates to, and connects its clause with, a noun or pronoun before it, called the *antecedent*; as,

"The master *who* taught us."

**149. 1.** The *antecedent* is commonly a noun or pronoun; sometimes a phrase (335) or a clause (334).

2. The antecedent is always *limited* or *explained* by the relative clauses; <sup>1</sup> as,

<sup>1</sup> Anal.—115.

The boy *who* reads ;

He who does well, will be rewarded ;

James is sick, which accounts for his absence.

**150.** Relative Pronouns are *Simple* or *Compound*.

**151.** The **simple** relative pronouns are **who**, **which**, **that**, and **what**. *Who* and *which* are alike in both numbers ; and are thus inflected :

|                   | <i>Sing. and Plur.</i> | <i>Sing. and Pl.</i> |
|-------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>Nominative</i> | Who                    | Which                |
| <i>Possessive</i> | Whose                  | Whose                |
| <i>Objective</i>  | Whom                   | Which                |

**152. 1. Who** is applied to **persons** ; as,  
The boy *who* reads.

2. And also to *inferior animals*, and things without life when they are represented as speaking and acting like rational beings.

**153. 1. Which** is applied to *inferior animals*, and things without life ; as,

The dog *which* barks ; the book *which* was lost.

2. And also to *collective nouns* composed of persons ; as, "the court of Spain, which ;" "the company which." And likewise after the name of a person used merely as a word ; as, "The court of Queen Elizabeth, which was but another name for prudence and oconomy."

**154. Which** was formerly applied to persons as well as things, and is so used in the common version of the Scriptures.

**155. That** is often used as a relative, instead of *who* or *which*. It is applied both to **persons** and **things** ; as, the man *that* walks ; the stone *that* rolls.

**156. What**, as a relative pronoun, is applied to

**things only**, and is never used but when the antecedent is omitted; as,

"This is *what* I wanted"=*that which* I wanted.<sup>1</sup>

*Observations on the Relative.*

**157.** The **compound relatives** are **whoever**, **whosoever**, **whatever**, and **whatsoever**, and are equivalent to the relative and a general, or indefinite, antecedent; as,

"*Whosoever* committeth sin, is the servant of sin;" that is, "*any one*," or "*every one who* committeth sin," etc. "*Whatsoever* things are of good report;" i. e., "*All things* (without exception) *which* are of good report." [See A. & P. Gr. 752.]

**158.** The *office* of the relative is twofold.—1st. It is used to connect its clause with the antecedent for the purpose of further describing it. Thus used, it is said to be **additive**; as, "Light is a body *which* moves with great celerity"=*and it moves*, etc. 2d. It is used to connect its clause with the antecedent for the purpose of limiting or restricting it like an adjective or adjunct. Thus used, it is said to be **restrictive**; as, "The man *who is* good is happy"=The good man is happy.

**159.** *Which* and *what* are sometimes used as **adjectives**, and have a noun following them; as, "Tell me *what* books you are reading;" "*Which* things are an allegory." In this sense *which* applies either to persons or things, and in meaning is equivalent to *this* or *these*.

**160.** *Who*, and also *which* and *what*, without a noun following, are sometimes used as **indefinite pronouns**; as, I do not know *who* will be our next President.

PARSING THE RELATIVE.

**161.** The relative pronoun is parsed by stating its gender, number, person, and case, and its antecedent.

<sup>1</sup>A. & P. Gr.—265.

(The gender, number, and person, are always the same as those of the antecedent.)

"The boy who."—"Who" is a relative pronoun, masculine, in the nominative singular, and refers to "boy" as its antecedent.

**QUESTIONS.**—What is a relative pronoun? What is the word to which it relates called? What is the proper use of the relative pronoun? What are the relative pronouns? What is *who* applied to? What is *which* applied to? Why is *that* used as a relative? To what is it applied? What sort of a relative is *what*? What does it include? What sort of words are *whoever*, etc.? When *which* and *what* are followed by nouns, what part of speech are they? In parsing the relative what are mentioned? How are the gender, number, and person of the relative determined?

### EXERCISES.

1. Is it proper to say—the man **who**, or the man **which**? why?  
                                   the dog **who**, or the dog **which**?       why?  
                                   the tree **who**, or the tree **which**?       why?  
                                   the family **who**, or the family **which**? why?
2. In the following sentences, point out the **relative**, and the word to which it relates.
3. What is the use of the relative in the first sentence? in the second? in the third? etc.] (158.)

The boy who studies will improve. I love the man who tells the truth, but all hate him who deals in falsehood. Do you remember the man whom we met? There is the book which you lost. It is the same book that you bought. That is the lady who has been kind to us, and whose hand is ever open to the poor. It is the hand of the diligent that maketh rich. He that giveth to the poor lendeth to the Lord. The temple which Solomon built. He who preserves me, to whom I owe my being, whose I am, and whom I serve, is eternal.

- [4. In the preceding sentences, wherever possible, change the **relative clause** for an adjective; as, "The boy *who studies*"=*studious* boy; and **write out** the sentences.]

### Interrogative Pronouns.

**162. Who, which, and what**, when used in asking questions, are called **Interrogative** pronouns.

**163.** The *antecedent* of an interrogative pronoun is found in the *answer* to the question; as, "Who did this? John did it." *John* is the antecedent.

**164.** As interrogatives, **who** is applied to persons only; **which** and **what**, either to persons or things. *What* is indeclinable.

**165.** *Who*, *which*, and *what*, used **responsively**, are **indefinite** pronouns; <sup>1</sup> as, "I knew *who* did it."

## PARSING.

**166.** Interrogative Pronouns are parsed by stating the gender, number, and case. Thus,

"Who saw the accident?" *Who* is an interrogative pronoun, masculine or feminine, third person, in the nominative singular.

"Who did that? John." *Who* is an interrogative pronoun, masculine, in the nominative singular. Its antecedent is "John" in the answer to the question.

**QUESTIONS.**—What are the interrogative pronouns? Why are they called interrogative? As an interrogative, what is *who* applied to?—*which*?—*what*? In parsing the interrogative, what is mentioned?

## EXERCISES.

[1. Point out in which of the following sentences, *who*, *which* and *what* are *relatives*; in which interrogatives; in which indefinites. Parse the interrogative and indefinite pronouns.]

Who steals my purse steals trash.—To whom did you give that book?—What I do thou knowest not now.—Who you are, what you are, or to whom you belong no one knows.—What shall I do?—Who built that house?—Do you know by whom that house was built?—Is that the man who built that house?—Which book is yours?—Do you know which book is yours?—What is wanted?—I know what is wanted.

[2. Write sentences, each of which shall contain one of these pronouns in one or other of these different senses.]

## LESSON 14.—Adjective Pronouns.

[Review the two preceding Lessons, and answer the questions.]

**167. Adjective Pronouns** are words used sometimes like **adjectives** to qualify a noun, and sometimes like **pronouns** to stand instead of nouns. There are four sorts; viz., the *Possessive*, *Distributive*, *Demonstrative*, and *Indefinite*.

**168.** The **Possessive** pronouns are such as denote *possession*. They are **my, thy, his, her, its, our, your, their.**<sup>1</sup>

**169.** The **Distributive** pronouns represent objects as taken separately. They are **each, every, either, neither.**<sup>2</sup>

**170.** The **Demonstrative** pronouns point out objects definitely. They are **this** and **that**, with their plurals, **these** and **those**.

**171.** The **Indefinite** pronouns denote persons or things indefinitely. They are **none, any, all, such, whole, some, both, one, other, another.** The three last are inflected like nouns.

*Observations.*

**172.** These pronouns are called *adjective*, because, like adjectives, they either are, or may be, *followed by a noun* which they limit.

**173.** *Possessive pronouns* have the same meaning as the possessive case of the personal pronouns to which they relate, but are used differently. The possessive pronoun must always have a noun after it, the possessive case of the personal, never, as it always refers to a noun previously expressed; thus, -



*Possessive Pronoun.*

This is *my* book;  
That is *her* pen;  
This is *your* hat;  
It is *their* house;

*Possessive Case.*

This book is *mine*.  
That pen is *hers*.  
This hat is *yours*.  
The house is *theirs*.

NOTE.—The word **own** (properly an adjective) is sometimes added to a possessive to make it emphatic; as, "*my own*," "*their own*," "*the boy's own book*."—A. & P. Gr. 295.

174. *His* and *her*, followed by a noun, are possessive pronouns; not followed by a noun, they are personal pronouns.

175. *That* is sometimes a demonstrative, sometimes a relative, and sometimes a conjunction; thus,

*Dem.* That book is mine.

*Rel.* It is the book *that* I bought.

*Conj.* I read, *that* I may learn.

176. Among indefinites may also be reckoned such words as *no*, *few*, *many*, *several*, etc.;—the compounds *whoever*, *whatever*, *whichever*, etc., and *who*, *which*, and *what*, in responsive sentences.<sup>1</sup> (165.)

\* \* *None* is used in both numbers; but it can not be joined to a noun.

## PARSING.

177. Adjective pronouns are parsed by stating their **class**, and the **word** which they **qualify**; thus,

"My book." *My* is a possessive adjective pronoun; and qualifies book.

**QUESTIONS.**—How many sorts of adjective pronouns are there? Name them. Why called *adjective* pronouns? What is a possessive pronoun? Name the possessive pronouns. What is a distributive pronoun? Name them.—A demonstrative pronoun? Name them.—An indefinite pronoun? Name them. In what are possessive pronouns and the possessive case of personal pronouns the same? In what do they differ? Give an example of the use of each. How is "*own*" used? When are *his* and *her* possessives?—when personals? In how many different ways is "*that*" used? How is "*none*" used? How are adjective pronouns parsed?

<sup>1</sup> A. & P. Gr.—284.

## EXERCISES.

[1. In the following Exercise, point out the **adjective pronouns**, and parse them ; the **nouns**, and parse them. Point out the **personal pronouns** in the *possessive case*.]

My book, her shoes, your horse, their father, his brother, every hour, that table, these quills.—This is my book ; that book is yours.—Where is my hat?—These apples are good ; give some to your brothers.—I will give one to each.—I have given them all away, every one.—Every day try to do good to some person.—This book will do as well as that one.—Every boy should keep his own books.—Do good to all men—injury to none.—This book is mine—that is yours.

## LESSON 15.—Exercises.

## NOUNS, ARTICLES, ADJECTIVES, AND PRONOUNS.

[1. In the following Exercise, point out the **articles**, and parse them ;—the **nouns**, and parse them ;—the **adjectives**, and parse them ;—the **pronouns**, and parse them :]

I found my hat upon your table ; but where is yours ?—Who put that glove in my cap?—Have you seen the book which my father gave to me?—That rod of yours is longer than mine, but not so long as John's.—Those trees have lost their leaves.—Every book on that shelf is mine ; I will give you a list of them.—Keep this knife for my sake ; it is a good one.—All men are mortal ; time waits for no one ; a wise man will improve every moment to some useful purpose.—An idle man will come to poverty ; but he that is diligent increases his store.—They that walk with the wise shall be wise ; but a companion of fools shall be destroyed.—Give to him that asketh thee, and from him that would borrow of thee, turn not thou away.

**Write other sentences** containing the parts of speech above named, and parse them as directed.

[1. Review thoroughly from Lesson 10, answering promptly and accurately all the questions.

2. Review from the beginning topically, reciting accurately all the definitions and rules. This may require two or three recitations. **Write** additional exercises under each lesson.]

## LESSON 16.—Verbs.

**178.** A **Verb** is a word or words used to express the **act, being, or state** of its **subject**; as,  
*I write; grass is green; the letter has been written.*

**179.** The **subject** of a verb is that person or thing whose act, being, or state the verb expresses.

### *Classification of Verbs.*

**180.** 1. In relation to their *meaning and office* in a sentence, verbs are of three kinds: *Transitive, Intransitive, and Attributive.*

2. In relation to their *form* verbs are *Regular, Irregular, and Defective* (**191**).

3. In the formation of *Compound tenses* they are distinguished as *Principal* and *Auxiliary*.—(**236**.) [APPENDIX IV, 5.]

### *Meaning and Use of Verbs.*

**181.** A **Transitive Verb** expresses an act done by one person or thing **to another**; as, *James strikes the table; The table is struck by James.*

**182.** An **Intransitive Verb** expresses the **being or state** of its subject, or an act not done to another; as, *I am; he sleeps; you run.*

**183.** An **Attributive Verb** asserts and connects an **attribute** with its subject; <sup>1</sup> as, *Snow is white.*

### *Observations.*

**184.** *Transitive* verbs are those which express an act that *passes over* from the actor to the person or thing acted upon; as, *He loves us.* Here, "*He*" is the actor, "*loves*"

expresses the act, and *us*, the object loved, or acted upon. The same thing can be expressed by another form; thus, "We are loved by him." Of these two forms of the verb, the first is called the *active voice*, and the second, the *passive voice*. (204.)

**185.** *Intransitive* verbs are verbs not transitive, whether they express action or not. They may form of themselves a *complete predicate* (340); and they have only one form, namely, that of the active voice; as, I *am*; you *walk*; they *run*.

**186.** *Attributive* verbs require, to complete the predicate, some word or words expressing a quality or circumstance *affirmed of the subject*.

**187.** Sometimes a verb, usually intransitive, *becomes transitive* by being followed by a noun of a similar signification; as, intransitive, "I *run*;" transitive, "I *run a race*." Also by the addition of another word; as, intransitive, "I *laugh*;" transitive, "I *laugh at him*."

**188.** A transitive verb is sometimes used in an *intransitive sense*, when the nature of the act and not its effect is considered; thus, transitive, "The boy *reads a book*;" intransitive, "The boy *reads well*." —

**189.** Transitive, intransitive, and attributive verbs may be distinguished *by the sense*, as follows:

1st. A *transitive* verb in the active voice (205) requires an object after it to complete the sense; as, The boy studies *grammar*, in the passive voice the person or thing that receives the act becomes the subject. An *intransitive* verb requires no object after it, but the sense is complete without it; as, He *sits*; you *ride*. An *attributive* verb requires after it, to complete the sense, some word, phrase, or clause, not an object, to limit or explain the subject; as, "The sun is *bright*."

2d. In the use of the *transitive* verb, there are always three things implied; the *actor*, the *act*, and the *object*

acted upon. In the use of the *intransitive*, there are only *two*—the *subject* or thing spoken of, and the *state or action* ascribed to it. In the use of the *attributive* verb, there are *three*—the *subject*, the *verb*, and the *attribute*.

**190. ILLUSTRATION.**—The *verb* is a *necessary word* in every sentence (346). Without it, we can neither affirm nor deny, nor express any fact or proposition. As we wish to express an act or state in a variety of ways; as, present, past, future, actual, contingent, conditional, etc., so there is a variety of forms assumed by the verb in order to express these things. Two important things must be attended to:

1. *Distinguish the verb* from every other part of speech. This can easily be done, if the pupil will only remember that every word that tells us what a person or thing *is* or *does*, or what is done to a person or thing, is a verb. Thus, when we say, "John writes," we know that "*writes*" is a verb, because it tells us what "John" does.

2. Discriminate when a verb is *transitive*, when *intransitive*, and when *attributive*, as described above (189).

**QUESTIONS.**—What is a verb? What is the subject of a verb? How are verbs divided, in relation to their manner and use?—in relation to their form?—in the formation of compound tenses? What is a transitive verb?—an intransitive?—an attributive? What do transitive verbs express? In how many forms can a transitive verb express any thing? What are these forms called? How many forms have intransitive verbs? Does a verb usually intransitive ever become transitive? How? Are some verbs used transitively and intransitively? What requires an object after it to complete the sense? What requires no object after it? What does an attributive verb require after it to complete the sense? In the use of the transitive, what three things are implied? What in the use of the intransitive verb? What in the use of the attributive verb? How do you know which word in a sentence is a verb? How do you know whether the verb is transitive—intransitive—attributive?

### EXERCISES.

[1. In the following Exercises, point out the **verbs**, and tell how you know them to be verbs; thus, "learn" is a verb, because it tells us what "boys" do; "rides" is a verb, because it tells us what "a man" does, etc.

2. Tell which verbs are *transitive*, which *intransitive*, and which *attributive*, and how you know them to be such; thus, "learn" is transitive, because

it tells what "boys" do to lessons; "rides" is intransitive, because **what** "a man" does is not done to any other person or thing; "tastes" is attributive, because it affirms the attributive or quality "sour" of the subject "apple."]

Boys learn lessons.—A man rides.—The apple tastes sour.—We read a book.—My dog barks.—The fire burns.—The fire burns me.—He took their apples.—You saw them.—We touched it.—They strike her.—I threw a stone at his window.—They killed my rabbit.—The horses eat their corn.—The cows drink water.—I can ride well.—A ride improves the health.—That man walks fast.—America was discovered by Columbus.—A long walk tires me.—I love her and you.—Sheep are animals.

[In the following sentences, it takes **two**, and sometimes **three words** to make the verb; and these two or three are always parsed **together** as one word.]

I *will water* the garden.—James can write a letter.—You may ride on my horse.—Robert will give a book to you.—Yes, he will give you a book.—You must light the candle.—Your father has sold his horse.—I have bought him.—John will brush your coat.—He *should have brushed* it before.—James will have written his letter before night.—He may have written it already.—He should be told of his mistake.—He may have been misinformed.

## LESSON 17.—Forms of Verbs.

[Review thoroughly the preceding Lesson.]

**191.** In respect of **form**, verbs are divided into *Regular*, *Irregular*, and *Defective*.

**192.** A **Regular Verb** is one that forms its **Past tense** (232) in the Indicative mood (215), active voice (205), and its **Past participle** (251) by adding **ed** to the Present; as, Present, *act*; Past, *acted*; Past participle, *acted*.

N.B.—Verbs ending in *e* silent, drop the *e* before *ed*; as love, loved.<sup>1</sup> The pronunciation of some forms of several regular verbs is different from the written form; thus, stop, stopped, is pronounced *stopt*; bar, barred, *bard*; walk, walked, *walkt*, etc.

**193. An Irregular Verb** is one that **does not** form its **Past tense** in the Indicative active, and its **Past participle**, by adding **ed** to the Present; as, Present, *write*; Past, *wrote*; Past participle, *written* (288).

**194. A Defective Verb** is one in which some of the parts are **wanting**. To this class belong chiefly *Auxiliary* and *Impersonal verbs* (290).

#### *Auxiliary Verbs.*

**195.** The *Auxiliary* or *helping verbs* are those by the help of which verbs are inflected. They are the following, which, except *be*, are used as auxiliaries only in the present and the past tense; viz:

*Pres.* Do, have, shall, will, may, can, am, must  
*Past.* Did, had, should, would, might, could, was, —

**196.** The verb *to be* is used as an auxiliary in *all* its tenses.

**197.** *Be* (Pres. Ind. *am*), *do*, and *have* are also principal verbs:

As Principals—I *am* a man; I *do* the work; I *have* a horse.

As Auxiliaries—I *am* loved; I *do* speak; I *have* heard.

#### *Observations.*

**198.** The *auxiliary* (or *helping*) verbs are so called, because, by their help, the verb is enabled to express *varieties* of time and manner of acting or being, which it could not do without them. The auxiliary always stands before its verb, and the *two* are regarded *in parsing* as *one word*; as, I *will write*, he *has written*, we *may write*.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup>A. & P. Gr.—66.

<sup>2</sup>Anal.—201—211.



**199.** Of the auxiliaries, *shall* implies duty or obligation; *will*, purpose or resolution; *may*, liberty; *can*, ability. The past tense of these verbs is *should*, *would*, *might*, *could*; but in this tense these verbs express the idea of time very indefinitely.<sup>1</sup>

**200.** In affirmative sentences, *will*, in the first person, intimates resolution and promising; as, "I *will* go;" in the second and third, it commonly foretells; as, "You *will* be happy."

**201.** *Shall*, in the first person, only foretells; as, "I *shall* go to-morrow;"—in the second and third, it promises, commands, or threatens;<sup>2</sup> as, "Thou *shall* not steal."—

**QUESTIONS.**—How are verbs divided in respect of form? What is a regular verb?—an irregular verb?—a defective verb? What are the principal defective verbs? Why are auxiliary verbs so called? What verbs are principal verbs as well as auxiliary? How are the auxiliaries *shall* and *will* distinguished?

### EXERCISES.

[Write the **Past tense**, and **Past participle** of the following regular verbs as in the succeeding exercise No. 3:]

Fear, love, look, hope, show, learn, move, wash, clean, walk, desire, return, oblige, form, force, punish, support, turn, touch, disturb, place, try, deny, delay.

[2. Change the following verbs from the Past tense into the Present:]

Marked, protected, composed, favored, turned, hated, mixed, believed, wounded, rushed, preached, hunted, crushed, warned, pleaded, loved, ended.

[3. In the following list, tell which verbs are regular, and which are irregular; and why:]

| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Past.</i> | <i>Past Participle.</i> |
|-----------------|--------------|-------------------------|
| Spoil           | spoiled      | spoiled                 |
| Go              | went         | gone                    |
| Take            | took         | taken                   |
| Write           | wrote        | written                 |
| Hope            | hoped        | hoped                   |
| Run             | ran          | run                     |
| Freeze          | froze        | frozen                  |
| Spy             | spied        | spied                   |
| Obey            | obeyed       | obeyed                  |

<sup>1</sup> Anal. 217.

<sup>2</sup> A. & P. Gr.—335—344.

## LESSON 18.—Inflection of Verbs.

[Review the two preceding Lessons.]

202. The Accidents of Verbs are **Voices, Moods, Tenses, Numbers, and Persons** (33).

*Of Voice.*

203. **Voice** is a particular form of the verb, which shows the **relation of the subject**, or thing spoken of, to the action expressed by the verb.

204. **Transitive** verbs have **two voices**, called the *Active* and the *Passive*.

205. The **Active Voice** represents the **subject** of the verb as **acting** upon some subject; as, James *strikes* the table.

206. Here the verb "*strikes*," in the active voice, indicates what its subject, "*James*," **does** to the object, *table*.

207. The **Passive Voice** represents the **subject** of the verb as **acted upon** by some person or thing; as, The table *is struck* by James (287).

208. Here the verb "*is struck*," in the passive voice, indicates what **is done** to the subject, "*table*," by James.

209. **Intransitive** verbs have the form of the active voice. A few admit a passive form, but not a passive sense; thus, *I am come*, means the same thing as: *I have come*.

210. When a verb, usually intransitive, is **made transitive** (187), it is then capable of a **passive voice**; as, "*My race is run*." "*He is laughed at* by me."

211. ILLUSTRATION. — Both the active and the passive voice express precisely the same act, but each in a different way. With the active voice, the subject does the act, or is *active*; with the passive voice, the subject is acted upon, or is *passive*. The words *active* and *passive* then strictly belong to the subject, but are properly used to distinguish those *voices*

or forms of the verbs which show that the subject *acts*, or is acted upon: that is, the form of the verb which represents its subject as active, is called the *Active* voice; and that which represents its subject as passive, is called the *Passive* voice.

**212.** Remembering, then, that the *subject* of a verb is the person or thing spoken of, when, in any sentence, we see that that subject *acts*, we know that the verb is in the *active* voice; thus, when we say, "Cain killed Abel," we see that "Cain," the person spoken of, is represented as acting, and therefore "*killed*" is in the active voice. Again, when we say, "Abel was killed by Cain," the subject or thing spoken of is Abel: it is represented as *acted upon*, and therefore "*was killed*" is in the *passive* voice.

NOTE.—Notwithstanding the same *act* may be expressed by the active and the passive voice, the writer or speaker makes choice of the one or the other, according as he wishes to give prominence to the actor, the act, or the person or thing affected by the act (see Analysis 288).

**QUESTIONS.**—What belongs to the inflection of verbs? What is meant by *voice*? How many voices has the transitive verb in English? What are they? How does the active voice represent its subject? How does the passive voice represent it? What voice have intransitive verbs? Have they ever a passive form? Have they ever a passive sense? When intransitive verbs are made transitive, can they be used in the passive voice?

### EXERCISES.

[In each of the following sentences, the pupil may be questioned, as on the first, in the following manner: Who is the person spoken of in this sentence?—*Ans.*—John.—What is said of John?—*Ans.*—He studies.—Does the word "*studies*" represent John as acting, or as acted upon?—*Ans.*—As acting.—In what voice then is "*studies*"?—*Ans.*—Active voice.—Change the sentence so as to make "*grammar*" the thing spoken of, and express the same meaning.—*Ans.*—"Grammar is studied by John."—Analyse this sentence in the same way as the other.]

John studies grammar.—Cain slew Abel.—Noah built the ark.—The temple was built by Solomon.—Columbus discovered America.—Pride ruins thousands.—Most men are governed by custom.—I have written a letter.—Them that honor me, I will honor.—Perseverance overcomes all obstacles.

## LESSON 19.—Moods

[Review the preceding Lesson, and answer the questions.]

**213. Mood** is the *mode* or *manner* of expressing the signification of the verb.

**214.** Verbs have *six* moods; namely, the **Indicative, Potential, Subjunctive, Imperative, Infinitive, and Participial.**

**215.** The **Indicative** mood declares the fact expressed by the verb *simply*, and *without limitation*; as *He loves; He is loved.*

**216.** The **Potential** mood declares, not the fact expressed by the verb, but only its *possibility*; or the *liberty, power, will, or obligation*, of the subject with respect to it; as,

*The wind may blow; we may walk or ride; I can swim; He would not stay; You should obey your parents.*

Both the indicative and potential moods may be used in *interrogative* sentences. *Have you written? May I go?*

**217.** The **Subjunctive** mood represents the fact expressed by the verb, not as actual, but as *conditional, desirable, or contingent*; as,

*"If he go away I will go with him."*—"O that men *were* wise!"

NOTE.—This mood is subjoined to another verb, and dependent on it.

**218.** The **Imperative** mood *commands, exhorts, entreats, or permits*; as,

*Do this; Remember thy Creator; Hear, O my people; Go thy way.*

**219.** The **Infinitive** mood expresses the meaning of the verb in a general manner, without any distinc-

tion of person or number, and commonly has *to* before it; as, *To love*.

\* \* For the uses of the infinitive see 492-500.

**220.** The **Participial** mood is used to *assume* action or state of some subject: 1. As continuing or incomplete; as, "I saw him *running*." 2. As complete or finished; as, "We saw him *ruined*."

The participle is always used in the same sentence with another verb, and can not be used alone.

### Observations.

**221.** The *form* of the *subjunctive* mood differs from that of the indicative only in the second and the third person singular of the present tense. The verb "*to be*" differs also in the past tense.

**222.** The *imperative* mood, strictly speaking, has only the second person, singular and plural; because, in commanding, exhorting, etc., the language of address is always used; thus, "Let him love," is equivalent to "Let thou him (to) love;" where *Let* is the proper imperative, and *love* the infinitive depending on it. (494.)

**223.** The *infinitive* mood is often used as a *verbal noun* as the *subject* of another verb; as, "*To play* is pleasant;" or as the *object* of a transitive verb; as, "Boys love *to play*." It has always a *subject of its own*<sup>1</sup> expressed or implied, but its use is sometimes so general that it is unimportant to ascertain its subject, or impossible to designate any *particular* person or thing as such.

\* \* The use of the infinitive as a verbal noun does not deprive it of any attribute as a verb;<sup>2</sup> for, if *transitive*, it may be followed by an object; as, *To forgive injuries* is a duty. Strictly speaking, it is the *infinitive clause* which is used as a substantive, and not the verb alone. (See Analysis, 116.)

**224.** A *participle* always *has a subject*<sup>1</sup> expressed or understood, to which it relates.

<sup>1</sup> Anal.—136, 1.

<sup>2</sup> 155, 2.

**225. ILLUSTRATION.**—If we regard the mode or manner in which an action presents itself to our minds, we may consider it either as an *actual reality*, or as a *possibility*, or as a *contingency*, or as a *command*, or as *general and indefinite*, or as merely *assuming an act* of some subject. The expression of these different circumstances gives rise to what are called moods. Thus we may say, *he goes*, or *he may go*, or *if he go*, or *go*, or *to go* or *going*. These six forms of expression indicate the six moods as given above.

**QUESTIONS.**—What is mood? How many moods are there? What does the Indicative mood declare?—the Potential? What does the Subjunctive mood represent? What does the Imperative mood do? What does the Infinitive mood express? How is the Participial mood used? In what parts does the Subjunctive differ from the Indicative? How many persons has the Imperative mood? What is a frequent use of the Infinitive mood?

## LESSON 20.—Tenses.

[Review the two preceding Lessons.]

**226. Tenses** are certain forms of the verb, which serve to point out the **distinctions of time**.

**227. Time** is naturally divided into *Present*, *Past*, and *Future*; and an action may be represented, in any of these periods, either as *incomplete* and *continuing*, or as *completed* at the time spoken of. This gives rise to six tenses, only two of which are expressed in English by a distinct form of the verb. The others are formed by the aid of *auxiliary verbs*; thus,

PRESENT. { *Action continuing*; as, I love, I do love, I am loving.  
              { *Action completed*; as, I have loved.

PAST. { *Action continuing*; as, I loved, I did love, I was loving.  
          { *Action completed*; as, I had loved.

FUTURE. { *Action continuing*; as, I shall or will love.  
              { *Action completed*; as, I shall have loved.

NOTE.—The time of the action expressed by a verb, may be further distinguished by an adverb; as, "He came *yesterday*;" "He will come *soon*."

**228.** The tenses in English are six; namely, the **Present**, the **Present-perfect**, the **Past**, the **Past-perfect**, the **Future**, and the **Future-perfect**.

*Tenses of the Indicative Mood.*

**229.** The indicative mood has all the **six tenses**; they are used as follows:

**230.** The **Present** tense expresses what is going on at the **present time**; as, *I love you*; *I am loved*.

**231.** The **Present-perfect** tense represents an action or event as **completed** at the **present time**; or in a period of which the present forms a part; as, "*John has cut his finger.*" "*I have sold my horse.*" "*I have done nothing this week.*"

**232.** The **Past** tense expresses what **took place** i **past** time; as, "*God said, let there be light;*" "*The ship sailed when the mail arrived.*"

**233.** The **Past-perfect** tense represents an action or event as **completed** at or before a certain **past** time; as, "*I had walked six miles that day;*" "*All the judges had taken their places before Sir Roger came.*"

**234.** The **Future** tense expresses what will take place in **future time**; as, "*I will see you again, and your hearts shall rejoice.*"

**235.** The **Future-perfect** intimates that an action or event will be **completed** at or before a certain time, yet **future**; as, "*I shall have got my lesson before ten o'clock to-morrow.*"

**236.** The tenses inflected without an auxiliary, are called **Simple** tenses; those with an auxiliary are called **Compound** tenses. (180, 3.)

## LESSON 21.—Tenses of the Other Moods.

**237.** The **Potential** mood has four tenses; the **Present**, the **Present-perfect**, the **Past**, and the **Past-perfect**.

**238.** The tenses in this mood indicate the *time*, not of the act expressed by the verb, but of the *liberty*, *power*, *will*, or *obligation*, expressed by the *auxiliary*, or sign of the tense: thus "I may write," does not express the act of *writing* as present, but only the *liberty* to write, expressed by the auxiliary *may*.

**239.** Hence the time expressed by the verb in the mood is less definite, and depends not so much on the tense as on *other words* with which it stands connected. This is the case especially with the Past tense.<sup>1</sup>

**240.** The **Subjunctive** mood in its proper form, has only the **present** tense. The verb **to be** has the **present** and the **past**.

The indicative and potential moods are also used in dependent clauses. (484.)

**241.** The **Imperative** mood may always be regarded as **present**; i. e. the command, etc., is present, though the doing of the act commanded is future.

**242.** The **Infinitive** mood has two tenses; the **Present** and the **Perfect**.

**243.** These do not so much indicate the *time* of the action as its state—the **present**, incomplete or indefinite; the **perfect**, *completed* or finished at the time indicated by the principal verb or some other word with which it is connected.

**244.** The **Participial** mood has three tenses; the **Present**, the **Past**, and the **Perfect**; as, Active,

<sup>1</sup> A. & P. Gr.—428-432.



*Loving, loved, having loved.*<sup>1</sup> Passive, *Being loved, loved, having been loved.*<sup>2</sup>

**245.** Since the Participial mood *does not affirm*, but only assumes an action or state of its subject, it partakes of the character of the *adjective*, and limits or qualifies the subject to which it refers.

#### *Observations on the Tenses.*

**246.** The *Present* tense is used to express, 1st—the simple *existence* of the fact; as, “He *speaks*.” 2d—what is habitual or *always true*; as, “He *takes* snuff.” 3d—in *historical narration*, it is used for the past; as, “Cæsar *leaves* Gaul,” for “Cæsar *left* Gaul.”

**247.** The *Present-perfect* is used, 1st—To express what *has taken place* at the present time, or in a period of time of which the present forms a part; as, “My father *has arrived*.” 2d—To express an act or state continued through a period of time reaching to and *including the present*; as, “He *has* [now] *studied* six months.” 3d—To express an act *long since completed*, when the reference is not to the act of finishing, but to the thing finished as still existing; as, “Milton *has written* poems.”

**248.** The time indicated by the *Past tense* is regarded as *entirely past*, however near; as, “I *saw* him a moment ago.” It is also used to express what was customary in *past time*; as, “She *attended* church regularly.”

**249.** The *Past* tenses of the *Potential*, and the *Subjunctive* mood, are less definite in regard to time, than the same tenses in the Indicative.

**250.** The *Present Participle* active ends always in *ing*, and has an active signification; as, James is *building* a house. In many verbs, however, it has also a passive signification;<sup>3</sup> as, The house was *building*, when the wall fell.

**251.** The *Past Participle* has the same form in both voices. In the active voice, its signification is active, and it

is never used except in connection with the auxiliary *have* or *had*; as, He has *concealed* a dagger under his cloak;—In the passive voice, its signification is passive; as, He has a dagger *concealed* under his cloak.<sup>1</sup>

\* \* Teacher illustrate this difference fully.

**252.** The *Perfect Participle* is always compound, and has an active signification in the active voice, and a passive signification in the passive voice.

**253.** The participle in *-ing* is often used as a verbal or participial noun, having the nominative and the objective case, but not the possessive.—In this character, the participle of a transitive verb may still retain the *government of the verb*, or it may be divested of it by inserting an article before it, and the preposition *of* after it; as, In keeping his commandments, or, In *the* keeping *of* his commandments, there is a great reward.<sup>2</sup>

**254.** Some participles, laying aside the idea of time, and simply qualifying a noun, become *participial adjectives*, and as such admit of comparison; as, An *amusing*—a *more amusing*—a *most amusing* story. A *most devoted* friend.

**255.** A participle may take a prefix and become a *verbal adjective*; as, “Unauthorized use of his credit.”

**QUESTIONS.**—What are tenses? How is time naturally divided? In each of these, how may an action or state be represented? How many tenses are there in the English verb? How many has the Indicative mood? What are they? What does the Present tense express?—the Past?—the Future? What does the Present-perfect tense represent?—the Past-perfect? What does the Future-perfect tense intimate? How many tenses has the Potential mood?—the Subjunctive?—the Imperative?—the Infinitive?—the Participial? In what different ways is the Present tense used?—the Present-perfect?—the Past? Has the participle in *ing* ever a passive signification? Give an example. How is the perfect participle used? Describe the use of the present participle as a verbal noun? How do participles become adjectives? What are such adjectives usually called? Do they admit of comparison? Give an example of a verbal adjective derived from a participle.

[Before proceeding to the next Lesson, review thoroughly from the beginning in two or three recitations.]

## LESSON 22.—Number and Person.

[Review the three preceding Lessons, and answer the questions.]

**256.** Every tense of the verb, except in the Infinitive and Participial moods, has **two Numbers**, the *Singular* and the *Plural*; and each of these has **three Persons**, except in the Imperative, which has only the *Second*.\*

**257.** The singular number is used with a subject in the singular, and the plural number with a subject in the plural (**446**).

**258.** The **First** person asserts of the person **speaking**; its subject is always *I* in the singular, and *we* in the plural; as, *I* write; *we* write.

**259.** The **Second** person asserts of the person **spoken to**; its subject is always *thou* in the singular, and *ye* or *you* in the plural; as, *Thou* writest; *ye* or *you* write.

**260.** In the second person the **plural form** is generally used for the singular; as, John, *you* are idle.

**261.** The **Third** person asserts of the person or thing **spoken of**; its subject is any noun, or the pronoun *he*, *she*, *it*, or *they*, or any substantive clause<sup>1</sup> used as a noun; as, *John* reads; *he* walks; *they* run; *That I said so*, is most true; *To succeed in business* requires close attention.

**Observations.**

**262.** The **forms** of the verb in the first, second and third persons **plural**, are always like the *first person singular*.

---

\* Strictly speaking, the verb itself has neither number nor person, but certain *forms* to correspond with the number and person of the subject.

<sup>1</sup> Anal.—120.

**263.** The *second* person singular of the present indicative active, ends in *st* or *est*; as, thou *lovest*; thou *readest*;—of the past, generally in *st*; as, thou *lovedst*. All the other persons in both numbers in this tense are alike.

**264.** Verbs that end in *s*, *sh*, *ch*, *z*, *x*, or *o*, form the third person singular of the present indicative active, by adding *es*; (**65**) as, He *teaches*. All others add *s*; as, he *loves*,—*reads*. (See **274**.)

**265.** An *ancient* form, now little used except in solemn address, has the ending *eth* in the *third* person singular; as, *teacheth*, *doeth*, *saith*; as, "All that a man *hath* will he give for his life."

**266.** Verbs ending in *y* with a consonant before it, change *y* into *i* before the termination: *est*, *es*, *eth*, *ed*; but not before *ing*; as, *try*, *triest*, *tries*, *trieth*, *tried*, *trying*. Verbs ending in *e* silent preceded by *i* change *ie* into *y* before *ing*; as, *lie*, *lying*.

**267.** The *Infinitive* mood, or *any substantive clause* sometimes expresses that or which a person speaks and is therefore the *subject* of the verb. When it does so it is always regarded as the third person, and a pronoun standing instead of it is in the neuter gender; as, *To play* is pleasant; *it* promotes health.

**QUESTIONS.**—How many numbers has each tense? What mood has no distinction of number or person? How many persons are in each number? What mood has only the second person? Of whom does the first person assert? What is its subject in the singular?—in the plural? Of whom does the second person assert? What is its subject in the singular?—in the plural? Of whom or what does the third person assert? What is its subject? What parts in each tense are alike? How is the second person singular formed in the present indicative?—in the past tense? When is the third person singular of the present indicative formed by adding *es*, or *eth*?—When by adding *s*, or *th*, or *eth*? How is it formed when the verb ends in *y* after a consonant?—in *ie*?

### EXERCISES.

[1. Tell the **second person** singular of the following verbs, and how it is formed.

2. Tell the **third** person, and how it is formed.

3. Prefix **thou** to each verb, when put on the **second** person singular; as, "thou tellest;" and **he** to each, when put in the **third**; as, "he tells."

Instead of *thou*, use the pronoun *you*, and change the verb to the proper form. Write out these exercises.

4. Write **Sentences**, each of which shall contain one of the following verbs.

Tell, speak, sleep, walk, read, learn, smell, see, hear, taste, touch, handle, write, pay, eat, drink, warm, teach, go, do, fill, play, stand, sell, buy, study, copy.

5. In the following words, tell which are in the **first** person, and why;—in the **second**, and why;—in the **third**, and why.

6. Prefix to each verb, in the following list, the **pronoun** of the same person and number as the verb; as, *I* love, *thou* lovest, etc.]

Love, lovest, loves, runs, runnest, sleep, teach, preaches, teachest, writes, write, eats, goes, goest, go, tell, teaches, speaks, read, readest, sews, pay, look, walks, jump, hop, skip, laughs, sing, cry, criest, study, studies.

## LESSON 23.—Conjugation of Verbs.

[The pupil should be thoroughly drilled in this Lesson, till he is able to tell every part at once and correctly—and to give promptly any part of the verb that may be required.]

**268.** The **Conjugation** of a verb is the regular combination and arrangement of its several *moods*, *tenses*, *numbers*, and *persons*.

**269.** In the **active voice**, most verbs have **two forms**; the *Common*; as, *I read*; and the *Progressive*; as, *I am reading* (285).

**270.** Besides these, in the present and the past indicative active, there is a third form called the *emphatic*; as, *I do read*, *I did read*. The other tenses, and also the progressive and the passive form, are rendered emphatic by placing a greater stress of voice on the first auxiliary; as, *I have read*—*I am reading*—*it is read*.

**271.** The *principal parts* of the verb are the *Present Tense Indicative*, the *Present Participle*, the *Past Tense Indicative*, and *Past Participle*. In parsing, the mentioning of these parts is called *conjugating* the verb.

|          | <i>Present.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|----------|-----------------|----------------------|--------------|-------------------|
| ACTIVE,  | Love,           | Loving,              | Loved,       | Loved.            |
| PASSIVE, | Am loved,       | Being loved,         | Was loved,   | Been loved.       |

**272.** A *synopsis* of a verb consists of the first person singular of each tense in the finite moods, and the forms of the several tenses of the infinitive and participial moods.

### *The Verb TO BE.*

**273.** The **attributive** irregular verb *To Be* is inflected through all its moods and tenses, as follows:

#### *Principal Parts.*

*Present, am. Present Part., being. Past, was. Past Part., been.*

### **Indicative Mood.**

#### PRESENT TENSE.

| <i>Singular.</i> | <i>Plural.</i> |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1. I am.         | 1. We are.     |
| 2. Thou art.     | 2. You are.    |
| 3. He is:        | 3. They are.   |

#### PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

*Sgn, have.*

|                    |                    |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. I have been.    | 1. We have been.   |
| 2. Thou hast been. | 2. You have been.  |
| 3. He has been.    | 3. They have been. |

#### PAST TENSE.

|               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. I was.     | 1. We were.   |
| 2. Thou wast. | 2. You were.  |
| 3. He was.    | 3. They were. |

## THE VERB TO BE.

## PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

Sign, *had*.*Singular.*

1. I had been.
2. Thou hadst been.
3. He had been.

*Plural.*

1. We had been.
2. You had been.
3. They had been.

## FUTURE TENSE.

Signs, *shall, will*.—Inflect with each.

- |                   |                   |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. I shall be.    | 1. We shall be.   |
| 2. Thou shalt be. | 2. You shall be.  |
| 3. He shall be.   | 3. They shall be. |

## FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Signs, *shall have, will have*.—Inflect with each.

- |                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. I shall have been.    | 1. We shall have been.   |
| 2. Thou shalt have been. | 2. You shall have been.  |
| 3. He shall have been.   | 3. They shall have been. |

## Potential Mood.

## PRESENT TENSE.

Signs, *may, can, must*.—Inflect with each.*Singular.*

1. I may be.
2. Thou mayst be.
3. He may be.

*Plural.*

1. We may be.
2. You may be.
3. They may be.

## PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

Signs, *may have, can have, or must have*.—Inflect with each.

- |                          |                        |
|--------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. I may have been.      | 1. We may have been.   |
| 2. Thou mayst have been. | 2. You may have been.  |
| 3. He may have been.     | 3. They may have been. |

## PAST TENSE.

Signs, *might, could, would, should*.—Inflect with each.

- |                     |                   |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. I might be.      | 1. We might be.   |
| 2. Thou mightst be. | 2. You might be.  |
| 3. He might be.     | 3. They might be. |

## PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

Signs, *might have, could have, would have, should have.*—Inflect with each.

*Singular.*

1. I might have been.
2. Thou mightst have been.
3. He might have been.

*Plural.*

1. We might have been.
3. You might have been.
3. They might have been.

## Subjunctive Mood.\*

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1. *If I be.*
2. *If thou be.*
3. *If he be.*

*Plural.*

1. *If we be.*
2. *If you be.*
3. *If they be.*

## PAST TENSE.

- |                                 |                         |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. <i>If I were.</i>            | 1. <i>If we were.</i>   |
| 2. <i>If thou were or wert.</i> | 2. <i>If you were.</i>  |
| 3. <i>If he were.</i>           | 3. <i>If they were.</i> |

## Imperative Mood.

*Singular.*

2. Be, or be thou.

*Plural.*

2. Be, or be ye or you.

## Infinitive Mood.

## PRESENT TENSE.

To be

## PERFECT TENSE.

To have been.

## Participial Mood, (OR PARTICIPLES.)

PRESENT, Being.

PAST, Been.

PERFECT, Having been.

\* Both the **indicative** and the **potential** mood are used in dependent clauses to express contingency, with a conjunction prefixed; thus, *If I am, If I have been, If I was, If I had been, If I shall or will be, If I shall have been, If I may be, etc.*



## EXERCISES.

[1. Let the pupil tell the **tense, mood, person, and number** of the following words—parts of the verb *to be*; thus, "**Am**," present, indicative, first person, singular.

2. Let him **parse** the same words; thus, "**Am**" is a verb, attributive, irregular; *am, was, been*; in the present, indicative, first person, singular.]

*Am, is, art, wast, I was, they were, we are, hast been, has been, we have been, hadst been, we had been, you have been, she has been, we were, they had been.*

*I shall be, shalt be, we will be, thou wilt be, they shall be, it will be, thou wilt have been, we have been, they will have been, we shall have been, am, it is.*

*I can be, mayst be, canst be, she may be, you may be, he must be, they should be, mightst be, he would be, it could be, wouldst be, you could be, he may have been, wast.*

*We may have been, mayst have been, they may have been, I might have been, you should have been, wouldst have been; (if) thou be, we be, he be, thou wert, we were.*

*Be thou, be, to be, being, to have been, if I be, be ye, been, having been, if we be, if they be, to be.*

[3. In the following sentences, **parse the words** in order; thus, "**Snow**" is a noun, neuter, the nominative singular, because the subject of "**is**." "**Is**" is a verb attributive irregular; *am, being, was, been*; in the present, indicative, third person, singular. "**White**" is an adjective, qualifies *snow*; compared, *white, whiter, whitest*.]

*Snow is white; he was a good man; we have been younger; she has been happy; it had been late; we are old; you will be wise; it will be time; if they be thine; be cautious; be heedful youth; we may be rich.*

## LESSON 24.—The Verb TO LOVE.

**274.** The regular verb **To Love**, in the common form, is inflected through all its moods and tenses, as follows:

## ACTIVE VOICE.

*Principal Parts.*

*Present, love. Pres. Part., loving. Past, loved. Past Part., loved.*

## Indicative Mood.

## PRESENT TENSE.\*

| <i>Singular.</i>                  | <i>Plural.</i> |
|-----------------------------------|----------------|
| 1. I love.                        | 1. We love.    |
| 2. Thou lovest.                   | 2. You love.   |
| 3. He loves ( <i>or loveth</i> ). | 3. They love.  |

## PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

Sign, *have*.

|                                 |                     |
|---------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. I have loved.                | 1. We have loved.   |
| 2. Thou hast loved.             | 2. You have loved.  |
| 3. He has <i>or hath</i> loved. | 3. They have loved. |

## PAST TENSE.

|                  |                |
|------------------|----------------|
| 1. I loved.      | 1. We loved.   |
| 2. Thou lovedst. | 2. You loved.  |
| 3. He loved.     | 3. They loved. |

## PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

Sign, *had*.

|                      |                    |
|----------------------|--------------------|
| 1. I had loved.      | 1. We had loved.   |
| 2. Thou hadst loved. | 2. You had loved.  |
| 3. He had loved.     | 3. They had loved. |

\* PRESENT TENSE. (*Emphatic form.*)

|                                 |                  |
|---------------------------------|------------------|
| 1. I do love.                   | 1. We do love.   |
| 2. Thou dost love.              | 2. You do love.  |
| 3. He does <i>or doth</i> love. | 3. They do love. |

† PAST TENSE. (*Emphatic form.*)

|                     |                   |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. I did love.      | 1. We did love.   |
| 2. Thou didst love. | 2. You did love.  |
| 3. He did love.     | 3. They did love. |

## THE VERB TO LOVE.

## FUTURE TENSE.

Signs, *shall, will*.—Inflect with each.

- |                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1. I shall love.    | 1. We shall love.   |
| 2. Thou shalt love. | 2. You shall love.  |
| 3. He shall love.   | 3. They shall love. |

## FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Signs, *shall have, will have*.—Inflect with each.

- |                           |                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. I shall have loved.    | 1. We shall have loved.   |
| 2. Thou shalt have loved. | 2. You shall have loved.  |
| 3. He shall have loved.   | 3. They shall have loved. |

## Potential Mood.

## PRESENT TENSE.

Signs, *may, can, must*.—Inflect with each.

- |                     |                   |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. I may love.      | 1. We may love.   |
| 2. Thou mayst love. | 2. You may love.  |
| 3. He may love.     | 3. They may love. |

## PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

Signs, *may have, can have, \* must have*.—Inflect with each.

- |                           |                         |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. I may have loved.      | 1. We may have loved.   |
| 2. Thou mayst have loved. | 2. You may have loved.  |
| 3. He may have loved.     | 3. They may have loved. |

## PAST TENSE.

Signs, *might, could, would, should*.—Inflect with each.

- |                       |                     |
|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. I might love.      | 1. We might love.   |
| 2. Thou mightst love. | 2. You might love.  |
| 3. He might love.     | 3. They might love. |

## PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

Signs, *might have, could have, would have, should have*.—Inflect with each.

- |                             |                           |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. I might have loved.      | 1. We might have loved.   |
| 2. Thou mightst have loved. | 2. You might have loved.  |
| 3. He might have loved.     | 3. They might have loved. |

---

\* *Can have* is not used in affirmative sentences.

## Subjunctive Mood.\*

## PRESENT TENSE.

| <i>Singular.</i>       | <i>Plural.</i>          |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. <i>If I love.</i>   | 1. <i>If we love.</i>   |
| 2. <i>If thou love</i> | 2. <i>If you love.</i>  |
| 3. <i>If he love.</i>  | 3. <i>If they love.</i> |

## Imperative Mood.

| <i>Singular.</i>                           | <i>Plural.</i>              |
|--|-----------------------------|
| <i>Common form.</i> 2. Love, or love thou. | 2. Love, or love ye or you. |
| <i>Emphatic form.</i> 2. Do thou love.     | 2. Do ye or you love.       |

## Infinitive Mood.

|                   |                         |
|-------------------|-------------------------|
| PRESENT, To love. | PERFECT, To have loved. |
|-------------------|-------------------------|

## Participial Mood, (OR PARTICIPES.)

|                  |              |                        |
|------------------|--------------|------------------------|
| PRESENT, Loving. | PAST, Loved. | PERFECT, Having loved. |
|------------------|--------------|------------------------|

## PARSING.

**275.** A verb is parsed by stating its **kind** (i. e., whether transitive, intransitive, or attributive); its **form**, (whether regular or irregular); **conjugating it**, and telling in what **tense, mood, voice, number and person**, it is found; also its **subject**; thus,

"He loves us," *Loves* is a verb, transitive, regular; *love, loving, loved, loved*; found in the present, indicative, active; third person, singular; and affirms of its subject, *he*.

N.B.—It is important in parsing to state every thing belonging to a word in as few words as possible, and always in the *same order*.

\* The present **subjunctive** or *elliptical form*, is used when both contingency and futurity are implied; the **indicative** is used when contingency only, and not futurity is implied. In parsing, the latter may be called the "indicative used subjunctively," being the indicative mood in form, and rendered subjunctive only by the conjunction prefixed. This is true also of the other tenses in this mood.

The **emphatic** forms of the present subjunctive are, *If I do love, if thou do love, if he do love*, etc.; of the past, *If I did love, if thou didst love*, etc., as in the indicative.

## EXERCISES ON THE VERB.

**QUESTIONS.**—What is the conjugation of a verb? How is a verb conjugated? Conjugate the verb *love* in the active voice. Say the indicative—present—past—future—the present-perfect—the past-perfect—future perfect. Say the first person singular in each tense—the second—the third—the first person plural—the second—the third. Say the emphatic form, in the present—in the past. What are the signs (or auxiliaries) of the present-perfect?—the past-perfect?—the future?—the future-perfect?—the subjunctive present? etc. What is the sign of the infinitive? Name the participles.

## EXERCISE I.

[1. Go over the following Exercise, and tell the **tense**, **mood**, and **voice** of each verb; thus, "He *loves*," present, indicative, active.

2. Go over it again, and tell the **person** and **number**; thus, *loves* third person, singular.

3. Go over it again, and join these together; and so tell the **tense**, **mood**, **voice**, **number**, and **person**; and always in this order; as, *loves*, present, indicative, active, third person, singular.\*]

[N. B.—The *pronoun* is no part of the verb, but helps to show its person and number; and the auxiliaries (or *signs*) are not taken separately, but always with the verb; so that the two words, and sometimes three, as in the past-perfect potential, are parsed together as *one* word; thus, *have loved*, the present-perfect, indicative, active.

\*.\* This Exercise should be repeated till the pupil can do it correctly, rapidly, and easily, and without missing, either in the number or order of the things to be stated.]

He loves, they love, I have loved, you will love, thou teachest, they will learn, he has written, I had given, James will go, John may come, he might read, they would have studied, they did study.—Write thou, come ye.—To love, to sing, to have played, reading, sleeping, running, love, learned, having loved, having gone, birds fly, horses galloped, the fire burns, the sun did shine, the moon has changed.

[N. B.—Pupils may be required to **write out** exercises of this kind for themselves, and parse them as directed above.]

\* In the imperative, omit the tense, and say thus, *love thou*, imperative, active, second person, singular.

In the infinitive, omit the person and number, and say thus, *To love*; present, infinitive, active.

In the participle, name only the tense and voice; thus, *loving*; present participle, active.

## EXERCISE II.

[Before beginning this Exercise, let the pupil go back and review thoroughly LESSON 16, and the exercises on it; then

1. Tell which words are verbs, and why; and whether **transitive**, **intransitive**, or **attributive**, and why.

2. Tell their **tense**, **mood**, **voice**, **person**, and **number**, as in the preceding Exercise.

3. Go over it again, and parse each verb by **putting all these together**: thus, *loves*, is a verb transitive, regular, in the present, indicative, active, third person, singular.]

He loves us, I will love him.—Good boys will study their lessons.—Children love play.—The dog killed my rabbit.—James has written a letter.—Cows eat hay.—A fire warms the room.—Bring some wood.—I have studied grammar.—Girls may write letters.—Your sister can sing.—He would like to hear a song.—Give that book to me.—I will give this book to you.—Lend me your pen.—Children should obey their parents; they should love God.—Remember the Sabbath day, to keep it.—All men must die.—Time waits for no man.—Do good to all men.—John will mend my pen; I will thank him.—You would oblige me by assisting me to learn this lesson.—Tell Henry to shut the door.—Snow is white.—The apple tastes sweet.—Washington was a wise and just man.

“And he opened his mouth, and taught them, saying, Blessed are the poor in spirit: for theirs is the kingdom of heaven.—Blessed are they that mourn: for they shall be comforted.—Blessed are the meek: for they shall inherit the earth.—Blessed are they which do hunger and thirst after righteousness: for they shall be filled.”

## EXERCISE III.

## 1. THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

**276.** A verb in the *active voice* tells what some person or thing does. That person or thing then is its *subject*, and, in the indicative, potential, subjunctive, and imperative

moods, is always in the *nominative case*; thus, in the first sentence of the preceding Exercise, the word "*loves*," tells what "*he*" does; *he*, therefore, is its subject, and is in the *nominative case*.

[Point out the **verb** in each sentence of the preceding Exercise; tell what word is its **subject**, and why? What case is the subject in?]

## 2. THE OBJECTIVE CASE.

**277.** A transitive verb in the active voice tells what its subject does to some person or thing. That person or thing is the *object* of the verb, and is in the objective case. Thus, in the above sentence, "He loves us," *loves* is a transitive verb, and tells what its subject, *he*, does to *us*. *Us*, then, is its object, and is in the *objective case*.

The *subject* is usually *before* the verb; the *objective case* generally *follows* it.

## EXERCISE II

### PARSING.

[Go over the preceding Exercise, and **parse each word** in order, the *nouns* as directed, (88); the *articles* as directed, (101); the *adjectives* as directed, (126); the *pronouns* as directed, (147); and the *verbs* as directed, (275).]

## LESSON 25.—Negative Form.

**278.** The verb is made to *deny* by placing the word *not* after the simple form; as, "Thou lovest *not*;" and between the auxiliary and the verb in the compound form; as, "I do *not* love." When two auxiliaries are used, *not* is placed between them; as, "I *would not have* loved."

**279.** In the *infinitive* and *participles*, the negative is put first; as, *Not* to love; *not* loving.

**280.** The simple form is seldom used with the negative. In the present and the past tense, the compound or *emphatic form* is more common. The following synopsis will show the manner of using the negative.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

|             |                            |                                    |
|-------------|----------------------------|------------------------------------|
| PRESENT.    | 1. I do not love.          | 2. Thou dost not love, etc.        |
| PRES. PERF. | 1. I have not loved.       | 2. Thou hast not loved, etc.       |
| PAST.       | 1. I did not love.         | 2. Thou didst not love, etc.       |
| PAST PERF.  | 1. I had not loved.        | 2. Thou hadst not loved, etc.      |
| FUTURE.     | 1. I will not love.        | 2. Thou wilt not love, etc.        |
| FUT. PERF.  | 1. I shall not have loved. | 2. Thou shalt not have loved, etc. |

## POTENTIAL MOOD.

|             |                            |                                      |
|-------------|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| PRESENT.    | 1. I can not love.         | 2. Thou canst not love, etc.         |
| PRES. PERF. | 1. I may not have loved.   | 2. Thou mayst not have loved, etc.   |
| PAST.       | 1. I might not love.       | 2. Thou mightst not love, etc.       |
| PAST PERF.  | 1. I might not have loved. | 2. Thou mightst not have loved, etc. |

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

|          |                             |                                     |
|----------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| PRESENT. | 1. <i>If</i> I do not love. | 2. <i>If</i> thou do not love, etc. |
|----------|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------|

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

|          |                                |          |                              |
|----------|--------------------------------|----------|------------------------------|
| Sing. 2. | Love not, or do not thou love. | Plur. 2. | Love not, or do not ye love. |
|----------|--------------------------------|----------|------------------------------|

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

|          |              |       |                    |
|----------|--------------|-------|--------------------|
| PRESENT. | Not to love. | PERF. | Not to have loved. |
|----------|--------------|-------|--------------------|

## PARTICIPIAL MOOD.

|          |                   |                    |
|----------|-------------------|--------------------|
| PRESENT. | Not loving.       | (PAST. Not loved.) |
| PERF.    | Not having loved. |                    |

## LESSON 26.—Interrogative Form.

**281.** The verb is made to *ask a question* by placing the subject after the simple form; as, Lovest thou? and between the auxiliary and the verb in the compound forms; as, Do I love? When there are two auxiliaries the subject is placed between them; as, Shall I have loved?



**282.** The *subjunctive, imperative, and infinitive* moods, and the participles, *can not have* the interrogative forms.

**283.** The simple form of the verb is seldom used interrogatively. The following synopsis will show how the verb is put into the interrogative form.

|             |                        |                               |
|-------------|------------------------|-------------------------------|
| PRESENT.    | 1. Do I love?          | 2. Dost thou love? etc.       |
| PRES. PERF. | 1. Have I loved?       | 2. Hast thou loved? etc.      |
| PAST.       | 1. Did I love?         | 2. Didst thou love? etc.      |
| PAST PERF.  | 1. Had I loved?        | 2. Hadst thou loved? etc.     |
| FUTURE.     | 1. Shall I love?       | 2. Wilt thou love? etc.       |
| FUT. PERF.  | 1. Shall I have loved? | 2. Wilt thou have loved? etc. |

#### POTENTIAL MOOD.

|             |                        |                                  |
|-------------|------------------------|----------------------------------|
| PRESENT.    | 1. May I love?         | 2. Canst thou love? etc.         |
| PRES. PERF. | 1. May I have loved?   | 2. Canst thou have loved? etc.   |
| PAST.       | 1. Might I love?       | 2. Couldst thou love? etc.       |
| PAST PERF.  | 1. Might I have loved? | 2. Couldst thou have loved? etc. |

**284. OBS.** *Interrogative* sentences are made *negative* by placing the negative either before or after the nominative; as, Do I not love? Do not I love?

**QUESTIONS.**—How is a verb made *negative*? Where is the negative placed in the simple form? Where, in the compound form? Where, when there are two auxiliaries? Where, in the infinitive and participles? Say the indicative present in the negative form throughout;—the other tenses. How is the verb made interrogative? Where is the nominative placed in the simple form? Where, in the compound form? Where, when there are two auxiliaries? What parts of the verb can not be used interrogatively? Say the indicative present throughout, interrogatively? Say the other tenses.

#### EXERCISES.

1. Put the **verb**, in the following sentences, into the **negative** form.
2. Put the **verb**, in the following sentences, into the **interrogative** form and **write out** the exercise.
3. Distinguish the different parts of speech, and parse them, as in the preceding Exercise, IV. (277.)

I love you.—You loved me.—James studies grammar.  
 —Your father has come.—He will go soon.—The ship  
 foundered at sea.—John would eat apples.—Apples will  
 grow on this tree.—The horse will run a race.—The fox  
 had caught the goose.—Rabbits eat clover.—Study over-  
 comes most difficulties.—Labor promotes health.—  
 Wealth makes the man.—Poverty scatters friends.—The  
 ships sail.—The sun has set.—The moon rose.—The  
 stars will shine.

N.B.—Let the pupils **write** similar exercises for themselves, and **parse** them.

## LESSON 27.—Progressive Form.

### ACTIVE VOICE.

**285.** The **Progressive form** of the verb is inflected by prefixing the verb **to be**, through all its moods and tenses, to the **present participle**; thus,

|             |  |  |
|-------------|--|--|
| PRESENT.    | 1. I am writing.                         | 2. Thou art writing, etc.                        |
| PRES. PERF. | 1. I have been writ-<br>ing.             | 2. Thou hast been writing,<br>etc.               |
| PAST.       | 1. I was writing.                        | 2. Thou wast writing, etc.                       |
| PAST PERF.  | 1. I had been writ-<br>ing.              | 2. Thou hadst been writ-<br>ing, etc.            |
| FUTURE.     | 1. I shall be writing.                   | 2. Thou shalt be writing,<br>etc.                |
| FUT. PERF.  | 1. I shall or will have<br>been writing. | 2. Thou shalt or wilt have<br>been writing, etc. |

[In this manner go through the other moods and tenses.]

**286.** NOTE. Verbs, which in the common form imply **continuance**, do not usually admit the progressive form; thus, "*I am loving*," (if proper) would mean nothing more than, "*I love*."

### EXERCISES.

[Change the following verbs from the simple into the **progressive** form:]

He writes, they read, thou teachest, we have learned, he had written, they go, you will build, I ran, John has done it, we taught, he stands, he stood, they will stand, they may read, we can sew, you should study, we might have read.

[Change the following, from the progressive into the **simple** form:]

We are writing, they were singing, they have been riding, we might be walking, I may have been sleeping, they are coming, thou art teaching, they have been eating, he has been moving, we have been defending, they had been running.

[3. Parse the above verbs in the progressive form; thus, "*We are writing*;" "*are writing*," is a verb, trans., irreg.; *write, writing, wrote, written*; (286) in the present, indicative, active, first person, plural, progressive form.]

## LESSON 28.—Passive Voice.

287. The **Passive Voice** is inflected by adding the **past participle** passive to the auxiliary verb **to be**, through all its moods and tenses; thus,

| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Present Part.</i> | <i>Past.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|-----------------|----------------------|--------------|-------------------|
| Am loved.       | Being loved.         | Was loved.   | Loved.*           |

### Indicative Mood.

#### PRESENT TENSE.

| <i>Singular.</i>   | <i>Plural.</i>     |
|--------------------|--------------------|
| 1. I am loved.     | 1. We are loved.   |
| 2. Thou art loved. | 2. You are loved.  |
| 3. He is loved.    | 3. They are loved. |

#### PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

Sign, *have*.

|                          |                          |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. I have been loved.    | 1. We have been loved.   |
| 2. Thou hast been loved. | 2. You have been loved.  |
| 3. He has been loved.    | 3. They have been loved. |

\*The **past participle** is used by itself in a passive sense without an auxiliary. [See APPENDIX II.]

# PASSIVE VOICE.

69

## PAST TENSE.

### *Singular.*

1. I was loved.
2. Thou wast loved.
3. He was loved.

### *Plural.*

1. We were loved.
2. You were loved.
3. They were loved.

## PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

Sign, *had*.

- |                           |                         |
|---------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. I had been loved.      | 1. We had been loved.   |
| 2. Thou hadst been loved. | 2. You had been loved.  |
| 3. He had been loved.     | 3. They had been loved. |

## FUTURE TENSE.

Signs, *shall, will*.—Inflect with each.

- |                         |                         |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. I shall be loved.    | 1. We shall be loved.   |
| 2. Thou shalt be loved. | 2. You shall be loved.  |
| 3. He shall be loved.   | 3. They shall be loved. |

## FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Signs, *shall have, will have*.—Inflect with each.

- |                                |                                |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. I shall have been loved.    | 1. We shall have been loved.   |
| 2. Thou shalt have been loved. | 2. You shall have been loved.  |
| 3. He shall have been loved.   | 3. They shall have been loved. |

## Potential Mood.

### PRESENT TENSE.

Signs, *may, can, must*.—Inflect with each.

#### *Singular.*

1. I may be loved.
2. Thou mayst be loved.
3. He may be loved.

#### *Plural.*

1. We may be loved.
2. You may be loved.
3. They may be loved.

### PRESENT-PERFECT TENSE.

Signs, *may have, can have, must have*.—Inflect with each.

- |                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. I may have been loved.      | 1. We may have been loved.   |
| 2. Thou mayst have been loved. | 2. You may have been loved.  |
| 3. He may have been loved.     | 3. They may have been loved. |

## PASSIVE VOICE.

## PAST TENSE.

Signs, *might, could, would, should*.—Inflect with each.

*Singular.*

1. I might be loved.
2. Thou mightst be loved.
3. He might be loved.

*Plural.*

1. We might be loved.
2. You might be loved.
3. They might be loved.

## PAST-PERFECT TENSE.

Signs, *might have, could have, would have, should have*.—Inflect with each.

- |                                  |                                |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. I might have been loved.      | 1. We might have been loved.   |
| 2. Thou mightst have been loved. | 2. You might have been loved.  |
| 3. He might have been loved.     | 3. They might have been loved. |

## Subjunctive Mood.

## PRESENT TENSE.

*Singular.*

1. *If* I be loved.
2. *If* thou be loved.
3. *If* he be loved.

*Plural.*

1. *If* we be loved.
2. *If* you be loved.
3. *If* they be loved.

## PAST TENSE.\*

- |                                       |                               |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| 1. <i>If</i> I were loved.            | 1. <i>If</i> we were loved.   |
| 2. <i>If</i> thou were or wert loved. | 2. <i>If</i> you were loved.  |
| 3. <i>If</i> he were loved.           | 3. <i>If</i> they were loved. |

## Imperative Mood.

*Singular.*

2. Be thou loved.

*Plural.*

2. Be ye or you loved.

## Infinitive Mood.

*Present.* To be loved.

*Perf.* To have been loved.

\* All the tenses of the **indicative** and **potential** are used in conditional clauses with a conjunction prefixed, to express *present* contingency; thus, *If I am loved, If I have been loved, If I was loved, If I had been loved, If I shall or will be loved, If I shall have been loved, If I may be loved, etc.*

## Participial Mood.

PRESENT. Being loved.

PAST. Loved.

## EXERCISE I.

## ON THE PASSIVE VOICE.

[1. Tell the *tense, mood, person, and number* of the following words in the passive voice;—change them into the **active** form.]

2. Go over the exercise again, and parse each word in order; thus, "*They*," is a pronoun of the third person, masculine (or feminine), in the nominative plural, the subject of *are loved*: "*are loved*," is a verb, transitive, in the present, indicative, passive, third person, plural, because its subject, "*they*," is third person, plural.]

They are loved; we were loved; thou art loved; it is loved; she was loved; he has been loved; you have been loved; I have been loved; thou hadst been loved; we shall be loved; thou wilt be loved; they will be loved; I shall have been loved; you will have been loved.

He can be loved; thou mayst be loved; she must be loved; they might be loved; ye would be loved; they should be loved; I could be loved; thou mayst have been loved; it may have been loved; you might have been loved; if I be loved; if thou wert loved; though we be loved; though they be loved. Be thou loved; be ye loved; you be loved. To be loved; loved; having been loved; to have been loved; being loved.

[3. Change the preceding, from the **passive** to the **active progressive** form.]

## EXERCISE II.

*Noun, Article, Adjective, Pronoun, Verb.*

[1. In the following Exercise, tell which words are articles—which are nouns—and why;—which are adjectives—and why;—which are pronouns—and why;—which are verbs—and why.]

2. Point out the verbs; tell whether transitive or intransitive;—and why;—active or passive—and why.

3. Go over again, and point out the nouns, and tell whether proper or common—and why;—singular or plural—and why;—their gender—and why.]

He has learned his lesson.—I loved him because he was good.—A good man will forgive those who may have in-

jured him.—Love your enemies; do good to them that hate you.—Remember your Creator in the days of your youth.—We are commanded to love our neighbour as ourselves. That book was printed in New York.—The winter has been cold, but the ground was covered with snow.—Columbus discovered America.—America was discovered by Columbus.—I have been studying grammar.—It is never too late to learn that which is good and useful.—Peter Parley has written some pleasing books.—Good boys love reading.—Study to understand what you read.—A wise son maketh a glad father, but a foolish son is heaviness to his mother.

[4. Go over the preceding Exercise, and parse each word in order, as heretofore directed.]

\*.\* It will now be important to **review** thoroughly and repeatedly from Lesson 23, particularly Lessons 23, 26, and 28, with the Exercises under them. This will require several recitations. And while that is going on, the pupil may also go forward with Lesson 29, conjugating from memory the **irregular verbs**, in such portions daily as the teacher may direct.

[5. **Write short sentences**, each of which shall contain one of the following irregular verbs. Use all of the forms here given.]

## LESSON 29.—Irregular Verbs.

**288. Irregular Verbs** are those that **do not** form their *past tense* and *past participle* by adding **ed** to the present; as, *Am, was, been*.

**289.** They may be conveniently divided into *three* classes:

1. Those which have only *one form* for the three parts given; viz.:

| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Past.</i> | <i>Past Participle.</i> |
|-----------------|--------------|-------------------------|
| Bet             | bet * *      | bet *                   |
| Burst           | burst        | burst                   |

\* Those verbs that are also conjugated regularly are marked with an \*. When two forms are given, the first is most used.

| <i>Present.</i>   | <i>Past.</i>                   | <i>Past Participle.</i> |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|-------------------------|
| Cast              | cast                           | cast                    |
| Cost              | cost                           | cost                    |
| Cut               | cut                            | cut                     |
| Hit               | hit                            | hit                     |
| Hurt              | hurt                           | hurt                    |
| Knit              | knit <i>r</i>                  | knit <i>r</i>           |
| Let               | let                            | let                     |
| Put               | put                            | put                     |
| Quit              | quit <i>r</i>                  | quit <i>r</i>           |
| Rap               | <i>r</i> rapt                  | <i>r</i> rapt           |
| Read              | read                           | read                    |
| Rid               | rid                            | rid                     |
| Set <i>be-</i>    | set <i>be-</i>                 | set <i>be-</i>          |
| Shed              | shed                           | shed                    |
| Shred             | shred                          | shred                   |
| Shut              | shut                           | shut                    |
| Slit              | slit                           | slit, slitted           |
| Spit              | spit ( <i>spat, obsolete</i> ) | spit                    |
| Split             | split                          | split                   |
| Spread <i>be-</i> | spread <i>be-</i>              | spread <i>be-</i>       |
| Sweat             | <i>r</i> sweat                 | <i>r</i> sweat          |
| Thrust            | thrust                         | thrust                  |
| Wet               | <i>r</i> wet                   | <i>r</i> wet            |
| Whet              | <i>r</i> whet                  | <i>r</i> whet           |

2. Those that have *two forms* for the parts given; viz.:

| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Past.</i>     | <i>Past Participle.</i> |
|-----------------|------------------|-------------------------|
| Abide           | abode            | abode                   |
| Beat            | beat             | beaten, beat            |
| Bend            | bent <i>r</i>    | bent <i>r</i>           |
| Bereave         | <i>r</i> bereft  | <i>r</i> bereft         |
| Beseech         | besought         | besought                |
| Betide          | <i>r</i> betid   | <i>r</i> betid          |
| Bless           | <i>r</i> blest   | <i>r</i> blest          |
| Bind <i>un-</i> | bound <i>un-</i> | bound <i>un-</i>        |
| Bleed           | bled             | bled                    |



## IRREGULAR VERBS.

| <i>Present.</i>       | <i>Past.</i>                 | <i>Past Participle.</i>       |
|-----------------------|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| Breed                 | bred                         | bred                          |
| Bring                 | brought                      | brought                       |
| Build <i>re-</i>      | built <i>re- r</i>           | built <i>re- r</i>            |
| Burn                  | <i>r</i> burnt               | <i>r</i> burnt                |
| Buy                   | bought                       | bought                        |
| Catch                 | caught <i>r</i>              | caught <i>r</i>               |
| Cling                 | clung                        | clung                         |
| Come <i>be-</i>       | came <i>be-</i>              | come <i>be-</i>               |
| Creep                 | crept                        | crept                         |
| Deal                  | dealt <i>r</i>               | dealt <i>r</i>                |
| Dig                   | dug <i>r</i>                 | dug <i>r</i>                  |
| Dream                 | <i>r</i> dreamt              | <i>r</i> dreamt               |
| Dress                 | <i>r</i> drest               | <i>r</i> drest                |
| Dwell                 | dwelt <i>r</i>               | dwelt <i>r</i>                |
| Feed                  | fed                          | fed                           |
| Feel                  | felt                         | felt                          |
| Fight                 | fought                       | fought                        |
| Find                  | found                        | found                         |
| Flie                  | fled                         | fled                          |
| Fling                 | flung                        | flung                         |
| Gild                  | <i>r</i> gilt                | <i>r</i> gilt                 |
| Gird <i>be- en-</i>   | <i>r</i> girt <i>be- en-</i> | <i>r</i> girt <i>be- en-</i>  |
| Grind                 | ground                       | ground                        |
| Hang                  | hung                         | hung                          |
| Have                  | had                          | had                           |
| Hear                  | heard                        | heard                         |
| Hold <i>be- with-</i> | held <i>be- with-</i>        | held, holden <i>be- with-</i> |
| Keep                  | kept                         | kept                          |
| Kneel                 | <i>r</i> knelt               | knelt <i>r</i>                |
| Lay <i>be-</i>        | laid <i>be-</i>              | laid <i>be-</i>               |
| Lead <i>mis-</i>      | led <i>mis-</i>              | led <i>mis-</i>               |
| Lean                  | <i>r</i> leant               | <i>r</i> leant                |
| Leap                  | <i>r</i> leapt               | <i>r</i> leapt                |
| Learn                 | <i>r</i> learnt              | <i>r</i> learnt               |
| Leave                 | left                         | left                          |
| Lend                  | lent                         | lent                          |

| <i>Present.</i>        | <i>Past.</i>       | <i>Past Participle.</i>        |
|------------------------|--------------------|--------------------------------|
| Lie                    | lied               | lied                           |
| Light                  | <i>r</i> lit       | <i>r</i> lit                   |
| Lose                   | lost               | lost                           |
| Make                   | made               | made                           |
| Mean                   | meant              | meant                          |
| Meet                   | met                | met                            |
| Pass                   | <i>r</i> past      | <i>r</i> past                  |
| Pay <i>re-</i>         | paid <i>re-</i>    | paid <i>re-</i>                |
| Pen, to <i>enclose</i> | <i>r</i> pent      | <i>r</i> pent                  |
| Rend                   | rent               | rent                           |
| Ride                   | rode               | rode, ridden                   |
| Run                    | ran                | run                            |
| Say                    | said               | said                           |
| Seek                   | sought             | sought                         |
| Sell                   | sold               | sold                           |
| Send                   | sent               | sent                           |
| Shine                  | shone <i>r</i>     | shone <i>r</i>                 |
| Shoe                   | shod               | shod                           |
| Shoot                  | shot               | shot                           |
| Sit                    | sat                | sat (sitten, <i>obsolete</i> ) |
| Sleep                  | slept              | slept                          |
| Sling                  | slung              | slung                          |
| Slink                  | slunk              | slunk                          |
| Smell                  | smelt              | <i>r</i> smelt                 |
| Speed                  | sped               | sped                           |
| Spell                  | spelt              | <i>r</i> spelt                 |
| Spend <i>mis-</i>      | spent <i>mis-</i>  | spent <i>mis-</i>              |
| Spill                  | <i>r</i> spilt     | <i>r</i> spilt                 |
| Spoil                  | spoilt <i>r</i>    | <i>r</i> spoilt                |
| Stand <i>with- et.</i> | stood <i>with-</i> | stood <i>with-</i>             |
| Stave                  | <i>r</i> stove     | <i>r</i> stove                 |
| Stay                   | <i>r</i> staid     | <i>r</i> staid                 |
| Stick                  | stuck              | stuck                          |
| Sting                  | stung              | stung                          |
| Strike                 | struck             | struck, stricken               |
| String                 | strung             | strung                         |

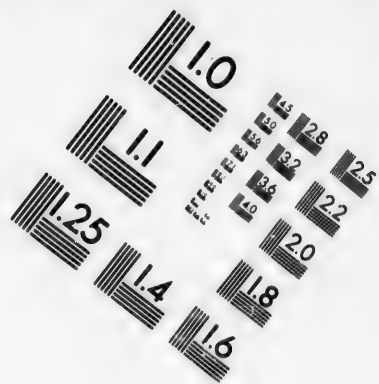
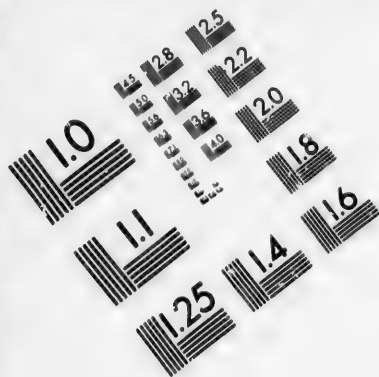
| <i>Present.</i>   | <i>Past.</i>       | <i>Past Participle.</i> |
|-------------------|--------------------|-------------------------|
| Sweep             | swept              | swept                   |
| Swing             | swung              | swung                   |
| Teach <i>mis-</i> | taught <i>mis-</i> | taught <i>mis-</i>      |
| Tell              | told               | told                    |
| Think <i>be-</i>  | thought <i>be-</i> | thought <i>be-</i>      |
| Weep              | wept               | wept                    |
| Win               | won                | won                     |
| Wind              | wound <i>r</i>     | wound <i>r</i>          |
| Work              | wrought <i>r</i>   | wrought <i>r</i>        |
| Wring             | <i>r</i> wrung     | wrung <i>r</i>          |

3. Those which have *three forms* for the parts given; viz

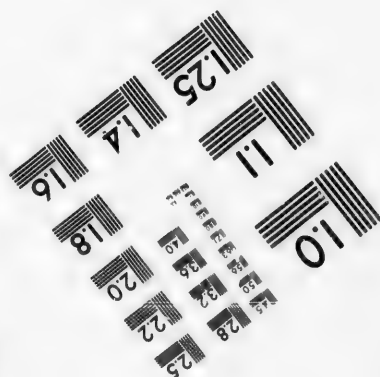
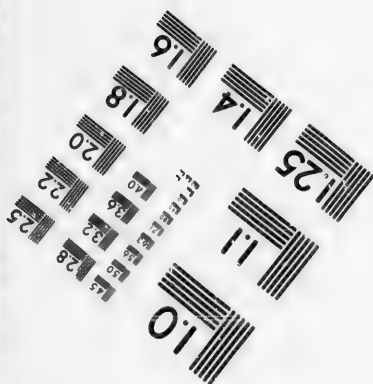
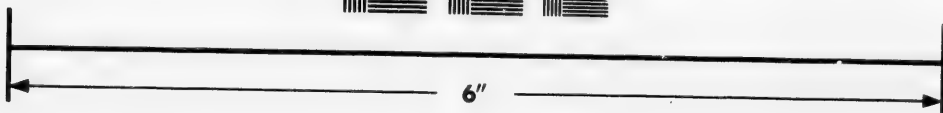
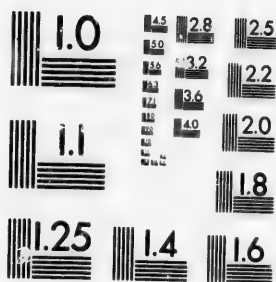
|                                   |                        |                      |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------|----------------------|
| Am                                | was                    | been                 |
| Arise                             | arose                  | arisen               |
| Awake                             | awoke <i>r</i>         | awaked               |
| Bake                              | baked                  | <i>r</i> baken       |
| Bear, <i>to bring forth</i>       | bare, bore             | born                 |
| Bear <i>for-</i>                  | bore, bare <i>for-</i> | borne <i>for-</i>    |
| Begin                             | began                  | begun                |
| Bid                               | bade, bid              | bidden, bid          |
| Bite                              | bit                    | bitten, bit          |
| Blow                              | blew                   | blown                |
| Break                             | broke, brake           | broken, broke        |
| Chide                             | chid                   | chidden, chid        |
| Choose                            | chose                  | chosen               |
| Cleave, <i>to adhere</i> <i>r</i> | clave                  | cleaved              |
| Cleave, <i>to split</i>           | clove, cleft           | cloven, cleft        |
| Clothe                            | clothed, clad          | <i>r</i> clad        |
| Crow                              | <i>r</i> crew          | crowed               |
| Dare, <i>to venture</i> <i>r</i>  | durst                  | dared                |
| Dive                              | <i>r</i> dove          | dived                |
| Do <i>mis- un-</i>                | did <i>mis- un-</i>    | done <i>mis- un-</i> |
| Draw                              | drew                   | drawn                |
| Drink                             | drank                  | drunk                |
| Drive                             | drove                  | driven               |
| Eat                               | ate, eat               | eaten                |

| <i>Present.</i>         | <i>Past.</i>          | <i>Past Participle</i>      |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| Fall <i>be-</i>         | fell <i>be-</i>       | fallen <i>be-</i>           |
| Fly                     | flew                  | flown                       |
| Forbear                 | forbore               | forborne                    |
| Forget                  | forgot                | forgotten, forgot           |
| Forsake                 | forsook               | forsaken                    |
| Freeze                  | froze                 | frozen                      |
| Freight                 | freighted             | fraught <i>r</i>            |
| Get <i>be-</i>          | got, gat <i>be-</i>   | gotten, got <i>be-</i>      |
| Give <i>for- mis-</i>   | gave <i>for- mis-</i> | given <i>for- mis-</i>      |
| Go                      | went                  | gone                        |
| Grave <i>en-</i>        | graved <i>en-</i>     | <i>r</i> graven <i>en-</i>  |
| Grow                    | grew                  | grown                       |
| Heave                   | <i>r</i> hove         | <i>r</i> hoven              |
| Hew                     | hewed                 | <i>r</i> hewn               |
| Hide                    | hid                   | hidden, hid                 |
| Know                    | knew                  | known                       |
| Lade                    | laded                 | laden                       |
| Lie, <i>to lie down</i> | lay                   | lain                        |
| Load                    | loaded                | <i>r</i> laden              |
| Mow                     | mowed                 | <i>r</i> mown               |
| Ring                    | rang, rung            | rung                        |
| Rise <i>a-</i>          | rose <i>a-</i>        | risen <i>a-</i>             |
| Rive                    | rived                 | <i>r</i> riven              |
| Saw                     | sawed                 | <i>r</i> sawn               |
| See                     | saw                   | seen                        |
| Seethe                  | <i>r</i> sod          | <i>r</i> sodden             |
| Shake                   | shook                 | shaken                      |
| Shape <i>mis-</i>       | shaped <i>mis-</i>    | <i>r</i> shapen <i>mis-</i> |
| Shave                   | shaved                | <i>r</i> shaven             |
| Shear                   | <i>r</i> shore        | shorn                       |
| Show                    | showed                | <i>r</i> shown              |
| Shrink                  | shrunk, shrank        | shrunk, shrunken            |
| Sing                    | sung, sang            | sung                        |
| Sink                    | sunk, sank            | sunk                        |
| Slay                    | slew                  | slain                       |
| Slide                   | slid <i>r</i>         | slidden, slid <i>r</i>      |





**IMAGE EVALUATION  
TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

0  
1  
2  
3  
4  
5  
6  
7  
8  
9  
10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60  
61  
62  
63  
64  
65  
66  
67  
68  
69  
70  
71  
72  
73  
74  
75  
76  
77  
78  
79  
80  
81  
82  
83  
84  
85  
86  
87  
88  
89  
90  
91  
92  
93  
94  
95  
96  
97  
98  
99

10  
11  
12  
13  
14  
15  
16  
17  
18  
19  
20  
21  
22  
23  
24  
25  
26  
27  
28  
29  
30  
31  
32  
33  
34  
35  
36  
37  
38  
39  
40  
41  
42  
43  
44  
45  
46  
47  
48  
49  
50  
51  
52  
53  
54  
55  
56  
57  
58  
59  
60  
61  
62  
63  
64  
65  
66  
67  
68  
69  
70  
71  
72  
73  
74  
75  
76  
77  
78  
79  
80  
81  
82  
83  
84  
85  
86  
87  
88  
89  
90  
91  
92  
93  
94  
95  
96  
97  
98  
99

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

| <i>Present.</i>        | <i>Past.</i>                  | <i>Past Participle.</i>        |
|------------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Sling                  | slung, <i>slang</i>           | slung                          |
| Smite                  | smote                         | smitten, smit                  |
| Sow                    | sowed                         | sown <i>r</i>                  |
| Speak <i>be-</i>       | spoke, spake <i>be-</i>       | spoken <i>be-</i>              |
| Spin                   | spun, span                    | spun                           |
| Spring                 | sprung, sprang                | sprung                         |
| Steal                  | stole                         | stolen                         |
| Stride <i>be-</i>      | strode, strid <i>be-</i>      | stridden, strid <i>be</i>      |
| Strive                 | <i>r</i> strove               | striven                        |
| Strow <i>be-</i>       | strowed <i>be-</i>            | <i>r</i> strown <i>be-</i>     |
| Swear                  | swore, sware                  | sworn                          |
| Swell                  | swelled                       | <i>r</i> swollen               |
| Swim                   | swum, swam                    | swum                           |
| Take <i>be- under-</i> | took <i>be- under-</i>        | taken <i>be- under.</i>        |
| Tear                   | tore (tare, <i>obsolete</i> ) | torn                           |
| Thrive                 | <i>r</i> throve               | <i>r</i> thriven               |
| Throw                  | threw <i>r</i>                | thrown <i>r</i>                |
| Tread                  | trod (trode, <i>obs.</i> )    | trodden, trod                  |
| Wax                    | waxed                         | <i>r</i> waxen                 |
| Wear                   | wore                          | worn                           |
| Weave                  | wove                          | woven                          |
| Write                  | wrote (writ, <i>obs.</i> )    | written ( <i>writ., obs.</i> ) |

**QUESTIONS.**—What are irregular verbs? Into how many classes may they be divided? What are they? Are any verbs both regular and irregular? Give an example. Since there is no list of regular verbs, how may we know what verbs are regular? Is "*am*" regular or irregular—and why?

## EXERCISE I.

[1. Name the **present** and **past** tenses, **indicative** mood, and the present and past **participles** of the following verbs; thus, *Take, took, taken.*

2. **Write** a short sentence on the slate or blackboard, with each verb, in the present tense—in the perfect tense—in the past tense—in any tense; thus, *We take breakfast early. John took my hat. I have taken his coat.*

Take, drive, creep, begin, abide, buy, bring, arise, catch, bereave, am, burst, draw, drink, fly, flee, fall, get, give, go, feel, forsake, grow, have, hear, hide, keep, know, lose, pay,



ride, ring, shake, run, seek, sell, see, sit, slay, slide, smite, speak, stand, tell, win, write.

[3. In the sentences made as directed No. 2, tell which verbs are **transitive**, and which are **intransitive**—and why. Point out the **subject** in each sentence, that is, the person or thing spoken of, and parsed in the nominative. Tell which nouns or pronouns are in the nominative—and why;—in the objective—and why.

4. In each sentence, put the verb in the **emphatic** form—in the **progressive** form—in the **negative** form—in the **interrogative** form—in the **negative-interrogative** form.]

### EXERCISE, II.

[1. In the following Exercise, point out which verbs are **regular**, and which are **irregular**—and why.

2. **Write** short sentences with each verb, as in the preceding Exercise, and do with each as there directed, in Nos. 2, 3, 4.]

Love, hope, trust, weep, throw, keep, brush, hunt, count, reckon, ask, sleep, eat, drink, spin, save, go, teach, wipe, am, draw, bruise, water, know, wash, spoil.

[3. Take the sentences containing **transitive** verbs, and express the same idea by the **passive** form; thus, suppose the sentence to be, "James loves praise;" passive form, "Praise is loved by James."

4. **Parse** the sentences so changed.]

## LESSON 30.—Defective and Impersonal Verbs.

**290. Defective verbs** are those in which some of the parts are **wanting**. They are **irregular**, and chiefly **auxiliary**. These are,—

| <i>Present.</i> | <i>Past.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> | <i>Present.</i> | <i>Past.</i> | <i>Past Part.</i> |
|-----------------|--------------|-------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------------|
| Can             | could        | _____             | Shall           | should       | _____             |
| May             | might        | _____             | Will            | would        | _____             |
| Must            | _____        | _____             | Wis             | wist         | _____             |
| Ought           | ought        | _____             | Wit or          | } wot        | _____             |
| Quoth           | quoth        | _____             | Wot             |              |                   |

*Imperative*,—Beware.

**291. Impersonal verbs** are those which assert the existence of some action or state, but refer it to no

**particular subject.** They are preceded by the pronoun **it**, and are always in the third person singular: as, *it seems; it becomes*, etc.

**292.** To this head may be referred such expressions as, *It hails, it snows, it rains, it thunders, it behooveth, it irketh*, and perhaps also, *methinks, methought, meseems, meseemed*, in which, instead of *it*, the first personal pronoun in the objective case, *me*, is prefixed to the third person singular of the verb. —

**QUESTIONS.**—What is a defective verb? Are they regular or irregular? What are they? What tenses do the most of them have? What tense has must?—ought? Is it proper to say “I had ought to read?” Why? What is an impersonal verb? By what are they preceded? In what person and number are they? What other word besides “it” is sometimes put before impersonal verbs?

## LESSON 31.—Adverbs.

[Review the preceding Lesson.]

**293.** An **Adverb** is a word used to modify a **verb**, an **adjective**, or another **adverb**, or to denote some circumstance respecting it; as, Ann speaks *distinctly*: she is *remarkably* diligent, and reads *very correctly*.  
[APPENDIX IV, 6.]

**294.** Adverbs have been divided into various classes, according to their signification. The chief of these are such as denote,

1. **Quality or Manner** simply; as, *well, ill, bravely, prudently, softly*, with very many others, formed from adjectives by adding *ly*, or changing *le* into *ly*; thus, *tame, tamely; sensible, sensibly*, etc.

2. **Place**; as, *here, there, where; hither, thither; hence*.

3. **Time**; as, *now, then, when; soon, often, seldom; ever*.

4. **Direction**; as, *upward, downward, backward, forward*.

5. **Affirmation**; as, *verily, truly, undoubtedly, yea, yes*.

6. **Negation**; as, *nay, no, not, nowise, never*.

7. **Interrogation**; as, *how, why, when, wherefore*.

8. **Comparison**; as, *more, most; less, least; as, so, thus*.

9. *Quantity* ; as, *much, little, enough, sufficiently.*
10. *Order* ; as, *first, secondly, thirdly.*
11. *Uncertainty* ; as, *perhaps, peradventure, perchance.*
12. *Conjunctive Adverbs* ; as, *when, where, how, while.*

### Observations.

**295.** The chief use of adverbs is to *shorten* discourse, by expressing in one word what would otherwise require two or more; as, *here*, for "in this place;" *nobly*, "in a noble manner."

**296.** Some adverbs admit of *comparison*, like adjectives; as, *soon, sooner, soonest*; *nobly, more nobly, most nobly*. A few are compared *irregularly*; as, *well, better, best*; *badly, or ill, worse, worst*.

**297.** Some words become adverbs by prefixing *a*, which signifies *at, or on*; as, *abed, ashore, afloat, aground, apart*.

**298.** In comparisons, the antecedents *as* and *so* are usually reckoned adverbs; the corresponding *as* and *so* are adverbs also; thus, *It is as high as Heaven*.

**299.** Circumstances of time, place, manner, etc., are often expressed by two or more words constituting an *adverbial phrase*; as, *in short, in fine, in general, at most, at least, at length, not at all, by no means, in vain, in order, long ago, by and by, to and fro*, which may be parsed together as adverbs, or by supplying the ellipsis; thus, *in a short space*; *in a general way*.

**300.** A *Conjunctive Adverb* is one that modifies two different words, and connects the clauses to which they belong; as, "I will see you *when* you come." "He is happy *where* he is."<sup>1</sup>

**301.** *There*, commonly an adverb of place, is often used as an introductory *expletive* to the verbs *to be, to come, to appear*, etc.; as, "*There* is no chance." "*There* are five boys here."<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup>A. & P. Gr.—534.

<sup>2</sup>529.

## PARSING.

**302.** An adverb is parsed by stating its **class**, and the word **which it modifies**; thus,

"Ann speaks distinctly." *Distinctly* is an adverb of manner, and modifies "speaks."

**QUESTIONS.**—What is an adverb? In the sentence, "Ann speaks distinctly," which is the adverb? Why? Into how many classes are adverbs commonly divided? Name the first three—the second three—the next three—the last three. How are adverbs formed from adjectives? What is the chief use of adverbs? How are adverbs compared like adjectives? Give an example. Are any compared irregularly? Give an example. What is an adverbial phrase? Give examples. How are such phrases to be parsed? For what do conjunctive adverbs stand? How is *there* used? How are adverbs parsed?

## EXERCISE I.

[1. In the following list of adverbs, point out the **class** to which each belongs.

2. **Compare** those that admit of comparison.

3. **Write** a number of short sentences, each of which shall contain one or more of the adverbs in the following list; and **parse** the sentences.]

Here, there, softly, boldly, wisely, seldom, upward, once, twice, hitherto, yesterday, how, more, little, secondly, enough, perhaps, yes, no, truly, not, already, hence, whence, better, sufficiently, wisely, somewhere.

## EXERCISE II.

[1. In the following sentences, tell what words are articles—what words are nouns, and why—adjectives, and why—pronouns, and why—verbs, and why—whether transitive or intrans., and why—regular or irregular, and why.

2. Which words are adverbs?—why? What do they modify? **Parse.**]

Peter wept bitterly.—He is here now.—She went away yesterday.—They came to-day.—They will perhaps buy some to-morrow.—Ye shall know hereafter.—She sang sweetly.—Cats soon learn to catch mice.—Mary rose up hastily.—They that have enough may soundly sleep.—Cain wickedly slew his brother.—I saw him long ago.—He is a very good man.—Sooner or later all must die.—You read too little.—They talk too much.

## LESSON 32.--Prepositions.

**303.** A **Preposition** is a word which **shows the relation** between a noun or a pronoun following it and some other word in the sentence; as,

"The book is *upon* the table." "The book is *under* the table." "They speak *concerning* virtue." [APPENDIX IV, 7.]

**304.** In these sentences, the prepositions, "*upon*" and "*under*," show the relation between "table" and "book;" and "*concerning*" shows the relation between "virtue" and "speak."

**305.** NOTE.—A preposition may be followed by an **infinitive mood**, a **phrase**, or a **clause**, used as a substantive<sup>1</sup> instead of a noun or pronoun; as, "We are about *to depart*."—"Honored for *having done his duty*."—"The crime *of being a young man*."

**306.** The principal words of this class are contained in the following—

*List of Prepositions.*

|         |            |                 |            |
|---------|------------|-----------------|------------|
| About   | Below      | From            | Through    |
| Above   | Beneath    | In              | Throughout |
| Across  | Beside     | Into            | Till       |
| After   | Besides    | Notwithstanding | To         |
| Against | Between    | Of              | Touching   |
| Along   | Betwixt    | Off             | Toward     |
| Amid    | Beyond     | On              | Towards    |
| Amidst  | But        | Out of          | Under      |
| Among   | By         | Over            | Underneath |
| Amongst | Concerning | Past            | Until      |
| Around  | Down       | Pending         | Unto       |
| At      | During     | Regarding       | Up         |
| Athwart | Ere        | Respecting      | Upon       |
| Bating  | Except     | Round           | With       |
| Before  | Excepting  | Save            | Within     |
| Behind  | For        | Since           | Without    |

*Observations on Prepositions.*

**307.** Every preposition requires the noun or pronoun, which is its object *after it*, to be in the *objective case*;

as, I gave the paper to *him*. When any word in the preceding list is **not** followed by an objective case, it is generally an **adverb**; as, He rides *about*.

**308.** But, in such phrases as *cast up, hold out, fall on*, the words *up, out, on*, may be considered as a part of the verb, rather than as prepositions or adverbs.

**309.** 1. Of the words related, that before the preposition is called the **antecedent** term of the relation; and that which follows it is called the **subsequent** term, or the **regimen** of the preposition. The preposition and its regimen together constitute a **prepositional phrase**. (335.)

2. The **antecedent** term is always limited by the **prepositional phrase**, which is in character, adjective or adverbial, according as the antecedent is a substantive or some other word; <sup>1</sup> as, He walks *with great rapidity*. It is a work of much merit. There was another large of understanding.

NOTE.—For a fuller discussion of prepositions, their uses and classification, see A. & P. Gr. 538-554.

#### PARSING.

**310.** The preposition is parsed by stating what part of speech it is, and the **words** between which it **shows the relation**; thus,

"Before honor is humility." "*Before*" is a preposition, and shows the relation between "honor" and "humility."

**QUESTIONS.**—What is a preposition? In what case is a noun or pronoun, after a preposition? When an objective does not follow a preposition, what part of speech is it to be considered? What is the related word before the preposition called?—the one after it?

#### EXERCISES.

1. Point out the **prepositions** in the following exercises.
2. Point out the noun or pronoun after the preposition, and the word to which it is related; thus, "I went from Albany to New York." The preposition *from*, stands before *Albany*, and shows its relation to the verb, "*went*." So, also, *to* stands before *New York*, and shows its relation to "*went*."

---

<sup>1</sup>A. & P. Gr.—596, 2.

I went from London to Bath.—The king walked about the garden with his son.—They dined without me.—I fell off a ship into the river near (to) the bridge.—This box of wafers is for you.—Charles put it upon the table against the inkstand.—Turn down the lane through the gate.—I shall go up the road after him.—Run to that tree near the house.—It stands between the trees.—Put it on the table at the side of the house.—I found the knife among the ashes under the grate.—Sit by me.—John is at school.—They all went except me.

[3. Parse the words in preceding Exercises.]

### LESSON 33.—Conjunctions.

**311.** A **Conjunction** is a word which **connects** words, phrases, or sentences; as,

"You *and* I must study; *but* he may go *and* play." "Two *and* two make four."

\* \* Conjunctions sometimes begin sentences; for example, see the first chapter of Genesis.

**312.** Conjunctions are of **two classes**: *Copulative* and *Disjunctive*. [APPENDIX IV, 8.]

**313.** A *copulative* conjunction *unites the meaning* of the terms which it connects. There are two kinds—

1. **Connective**, which simply connect the meaning of two united sentences; as, "The sun shines, *and* the day is warm."

2. **Continuative**, which add on a limiting clause, and extend the sense of the principal; as, "We will go, *when* my brother arrives."

NOTE.—The latter generally introduce and connect a subordinate clause, which limits the principal clause, or some part thereof.

**314.** A **Disjunctive** conjunction is one which, while it joins two sentences together, disconnects their meaning. There are two kinds of disjunctives—

1. **Distributive**, which simply disconnect, or distribute, the meaning of the united sentences; as, "You may go, *or* you may stay."

2. **Adversative**, which contrast the meaning of united sentences; as, "He will go, *but* I will stay."

### *A List of Conjunctions.*

Also, and, because, both, for, if, since, that, then, therefore, wherefore, although, as, as well as, but, either, except, lest, neither, nor, notwithstanding, or, provided, so, than, though, unless, whether, yet, still.

**315.** **Obs.** The copulative conjunctions connect things that are to be taken *together*; as, "You and I (i. e. both of us) must go." The disjunctive conjunctions connect things that are to be taken *separately*, or one to the exclusion of the rest; as, "You or I (i. e. the one or the other, but not both) must go."

**NOTE.**—When conjunctions connect **sentences**, they do not connect **individual words** in the sentence. When they connect **words**, the words connected must be of the same class,—if nouns, of the **same case**; if verbs, same **mood and tense**, and with the same subject; if adjectives or adverbs, they must **limit the same word** <sup>1</sup> (528).

### PARSING.

**316.** Conjunctions are parsed by stating to what **class** they belong, and the **words, phrases, or sentences** which they **join together**; thus,

"You and I must study." *And* is a conjunction, copulative, connective, and connects *You* and *I*.

**QUESTIONS.**—What is a conjunction? How many kinds of conjunctions are there? What are the copulative? How many classes? Define each, and give an example. The disjunctive? How are they distinguished? Give an example of each. How do these two classes differ? How are conjunctions parsed?

### EXERCISES.

[1. Point out the conjunctions in the following Exercise, the class to which each belongs, and the words or sentences which they connect

2. Parse all the words in order.]



Henry and Charles read their lessons.—I or he will be there.—I will be with you, unless you call.—I slept well, though the dog barked.—Read that you may learn.—John says that he will do it.—As he writes, so do I read; for I am fond of reading.—Neither the boys nor the girls are asleep.—I would call if I could, but I can not.—Take care lest you fall.—Two and two make four.—He is better than I thought he was, though he behaved ill.—Since that has happened, I must go.—Do to others as you would that they should do to you.—I study that I may improve.—When the sky falls, we shall catch larks.—If we study, we shall learn.—Not only the men, but also the women were present.

### LESSON 34.—Interjections.

**317.** An **Interjection** is a word used in exclamations, to express some **emotion** of the mind; as, *Oh!* what a sight is here! *Well done!*

#### *A List of Interjections.*

Adieu! ah! alas! alack! away! aha! begone! hark! ho! ha! he! hail! halloo! hum! hush! huzza! hist! heydey! lo! O! Oh! O strange! O brave! pshaw! see! well-a-day! etc.

#### *Observations on Interjections.*

**318.** The *Interjection* is thrown in among the other words in a sentence, but does **not affect their construction**.

**319.** **O** is used to express wishing or exclamation, and should be prefixed only to a noun or a pronoun, in a direct address; as, "O Virtue! how amiable thou art!" **Oh** is used detached from the word, with a point of exclamation after it. It implies an emotion of pain, sorrow, or surprise; as, "*Oh!* what a sight is here."

#### PARSING.

**320.** Interjections are parsed by naming them as such, stating why, and the emotion expressed.

**QUESTIONS.**—What is an *Interjection*? Name some of them. Does the interjection affect the construction of the other words in a sentence? How do *O* and *Oh* differ in meaning? How, in the manner of writing them? How are interjections parsed?

### EXERCISES.

1. Point out the Interjections in the Exercises.
2. Name all the other parts of speech, and parse them.

Hah! I am glad to see you.—Well-a-day! I did not expect this.—Alas! I am ruined.—Indeed! is that true?—What! is it possible?—Lo! there he is.—Hem! I do not think so.—O what a benefit education is!—Ah! you are a happy fellow.—Hush! what was that?—Ha! ha! ha! how laughable that is!—Ho! come this way.—Ah! poor fellow, he is to be pitied.—Hurrah! we have finished our lesson.—Come! now for the next.

### LESSON 35.—How to distinguish the Parts of Speech.

**321.** The *articles*, *pronouns*, *prepositions*, *conjunctions*, and *interjections*, are so few in number, that they may be easily committed to memory. [APPENDIX IV, 9.]

**322.** The other four, namely, the *noun*, *adjective*, *verb*, and *adverb*, will be best distinguished by comparing their meaning and use with the *definitions* of these parts of speech in their place; thus,

1. Every word that is the name of a person or thing, is a *noun*; because "A noun is the name of any person, place, or thing."
2. A word that qualifies a noun by describing, limiting, or distinguishing it, is an *adjective*; because "An adjective is a word used to qualify a substantive."
3. A word that expresses what a person or thing does, or is, or what is done to a person or thing, is a *verb*; because "A verb is a word used to express the act, being, or state of its subject."

4. A word that modifies another by expressing a circumstance of time, place, manner, etc., is an *adverb*; because "An adverb," etc. (293.)

**323.** The following *technical method*, though neither very accurate nor certain, may assist the young people in distinguishing these four parts of speech; but the preceding should always be preferred.

1. A word that makes sense after an article, or the phrase, "*I speak of*," is a *noun*; as, A *man*; I speak of *money*.
2. A word that makes sense before the word *thing*, is commonly an *adjective*; as, A *good* thing; an *old* thing.
3. A *verb* makes sense with *I, thou, he*, or *to* before it; as, I *write*; he *writes*; to *teach*.
4. The answer to the question, *How? When? Where?* is generally an *adverb*; as, How do you do? *Very well*. When did you arrive? *Yesterday*. Where do you live? I live *here*.

#### Observations.

**324.** Many words are sometimes to be regarded as one part of speech, and sometimes as another, according to their *meaning and use* in the place where they are used; thus,

- |        |   |  |
|--------|---|--|
| THAT,  | { | <i>Demonstrative Pronoun</i> ; as, "Give me <i>that</i> book."           |
|        | { | <i>Relative Pronoun</i> ; as, "It is the same <i>that</i> I bought."     |
|        | { | <i>Conjunction</i> ; as, "I am glad <i>that</i> you are come."           |
| MUCH,  | { | <i>Adverb</i> ; as, "It is <i>much</i> better to give than to receive."  |
|        | { | <i>Adjective</i> ; as, "In <i>much</i> wisdom is <i>much</i> grief."     |
|        | { | <i>Noun</i> ; as, "Where <i>much</i> is given, <i>much</i> is required." |
| SINCE, | { | <i>Conjunction</i> ; as, " <i>Since</i> we must part."                   |
|        | { | <i>Preposition</i> ; as, " <i>Since</i> that time."                      |
|        | { | <i>Adverb</i> ; as, "Your friend has gone long <i>since</i> ."           |
| BUT,   | { | <i>Conjunction</i> ; as, "Poor <i>but</i> honest."                       |
|        | { | <i>Preposition</i> ; as, "All <i>but</i> one."                           |
|        | { | <i>Adverb</i> ; as, "He has <i>but</i> just enough."                     |
| ONLY,  | { | <i>Adjective</i> ; as, "An <i>only</i> son."                             |
|        | { | <i>Adverb</i> ; as, "It is <i>only</i> evil."                            |

\* \* *Write* additional sentences containing these words in the several senses indicated above.

**325.** When the same word is in one place a *preposition*, and in another a *conjunction*, let it be remembered that the preposition is followed by an objective case; the conjunction is not. For additional suggestions upon certain of the parts of speech, see APPENDIX III, and A. & P. Gr.—APPENDIX I.

**QUESTIONS.**—How may we most readily distinguish articles, pronouns, prepositions, conjunctions, and interjections? How do you distinguish the noun from other parts of speech?—the adjective?—the verb?—the adverb?

### LESSON 36.—Parsing.

**326.** *Parsing* is the resolving of a sentence into its elements, or parts of speech. Words are parsed two ways: *Etymologically* and *Syntactically*.

1. In *Etymological parsing*, the pupil is required to state the part of speech to which a word belongs, and to describe it by its *accidents* and *uses*.

2. In *Syntactical parsing*, the pupil is required, besides parsing the word etymologically, to state its *relation to other words* in the sentence, and the rules by which these relations are governed.

N. B. Before proceeding to Syntax, the pupil should be expert in etymological parsing. This he can hardly fail to be, if he has attended, in the manner directed, to the exercises already given. Lessons from the reading book, or sentences from any plain writer, may now be analyzed and parsed, as already directed. To assist further in this, observe the following

#### GENERAL PRINCIPLES.

**327.** In order to parse a sentence, it is necessary to **understand its proper meaning**. Then, in parsing it, let the following **general principles** be remembered, viz.:

1. Every *Article, Adjective, Adjective pronoun, or Participle*, belongs to some *noun* or *pronoun*, expressed or understood.

2. The *subject* of a verb, i. e., the person or thing spoken of, is usually in the *nominative*.

3. Every noun or pronoun, in the *nominative* case, when spoken of, is the *subject* of a verb, expressed or understood, i. e., it is that of which the verb affirms. To this there are a few exceptions.

NOTE.—A word is **expressed**, when it appears in the sentence; it is **understood**, when it is implied but does not appear. Thus, "Mary's paper is white, but John's is brown;" in the first member of the sentence "paper" is *expressed*, in the last it is *understood*.

4. Every *verb* in the indicative, potential, or subjunctive mood, must have a *subject* in the nominative case, expressed or understood, i. e. something of which it affirms.

5. Every *transitive* verb in the active voice, and every *preposition*, governs a noun or pronoun in the *objective* case; and every objective case is the object of a transitive verb in the active voice, or of a preposition.

6. Every verb in the *infinitive* mood depends upon a *verb* or *adjective*; sometimes a *noun*; and sometimes it stands after the conjunction, *than* or *as*.

**QUESTIONS.**—What is parsing? How many kinds of parsing are there? What is done in etymological parsing?—in syntactical parsing? What is necessary before parsing a sentence? To what does every article, adjective, etc., belong? In what case is the subject of a verb? When a noun or pronoun in the nominative case is spoken of, what must it have? What must every verb in the indicative, potential, or subjunctive mood have? What case does every transitive verb in the active voice, and every preposition, have after it? By what is the objective case always governed? When a verb is in the infinitive mood, by what is it governed?

[For the answer to the following questions, go back to the pages indicated.]

How is a noun parsed? (88)—an article? (101)—an adjective? (126)—a pronoun? (147, 161, 166, 177)—a verb? (275)—an adverb? (302)—a preposition? (310)—a conjunction? (316)—an interjection? (320.) Parse all these as directed in the places referred to, and as described in the next Lesson.

## LESSON 37.—Etymological Parsing.

## MODEL.

**328.** "Give instruction to a wise man, and he will be yet wiser."

*Give*.... a verb, transitive, irregular; *give, giving, gave, given*; in the imperative, active, second person, singular. Its subject is *thou* understood, and its object, *instruction*.

*Instruction*.... a noun, neuter, in the objective singular; the object of *give*.\*

*To*.... a preposition; it points out the relation between its object, *man*, and *give*.

*A*.... an article, indefinite, belongs to *man*.

*Wise*.... a common adjective; compared, *wise, wiser, wisest*; and expresses a quality of *man*.

*Man*.... a noun, masculine, in the objective singular; pl. *men*.

*And*.... a conjunction, and connects the members.

*He*.... a pronoun of the third person, masculine, in the nominative singular; the subject of *will be*, and stands for *man*.

*Will be*.... a verb attributive, irregular; *am, being, was, been*; in the future, indicative, third person, singular, and affirms of its subject, *he*.

*Yet*.... an adverb, modifying *wiser*.

*Wiser*.... an adjective, comparative degree; *wise, wiser, wisest*; and belongs to *man*, or is predicated of *he*.

**329.** As a further exercise, the pupil may be required to give a reason for every thing affirmed in the preceding model; thus,

Why do you say that *give* is a verb? Why transitive? Why irregular? Why the imperative? Why the second person? Why singular?

Why do you say that *instruction* is a noun? Why neuter? Why singular? Why the objective? etc.

---

\* The person and class of the noun are omitted for reasons stated, ILLUSTRATION, p. 17, note.

## EXERCISES IN PARSING.

**330.** After the same manner as in the preceding Lesson, parse and practice on the following

*Maxims for Young and Old.*

I. **EARLY PIETY.**—Remember now thy Creator in the days of thy youth; while the evil days come not, nor the years draw nigh, when thou shalt say, I have no pleasure in them.

Children, obey your parents; honor thy father and mother, is the first commandment with promise.

A wise son heareth a father's instruction, but a scorner heareth not rebuke.—The eye that mocketh at his father, and despiseth to obey his mother, the ravens of the valley shall pluck out, and the young eagles shall eat it.—A wise son maketh a glad father, but a foolish son is the heaviness of his mother.—Whose loveth instruction loveth knowledge, but he that hateth reproof is brutish.

II. **EDUCATION.**—Train up a child in the way he should go, and when he is old he will not depart from it.

Quintilian recommends to all parents the timely education of their children; advising to train them up in learning, good manners, and virtuous exercises; since we commonly retain those things in age which we entertained in youth.

'Tis education forms the common mind;

Just as the twig is bent, the tree's inclined.

An industrious and virtuous education of children is a better inheritance for them than a great estate.

III. **PROSPERITY AND ADVERSITY.**—If I must make choice either of continual prosperity or adversity, I would choose the latter; for in adversity no good man can want comfort, whereas, in prosperity, most men want discretion. Adversity overcome is the greatest glory; and, willingly undergone, the greatest virtue; sufferings are but the trials of gallant spirits.

IV. **ANGER.**—The continuance of anger is hatred; the continuance of hatred becomes malice; that anger is not war-

rantable which has suffered the sun to go down upon it. Let all men avoid rash speaking. One unquiet, perverse disposition, distempers the peace and unity of a whole family, or society—as one jarring instrument will spoil a whole concert.

V. RICHES.—Riches beget pride; pride, impatience; impatience, revenge; revenge, war; war, poverty; poverty, humility; humility, patience; patience, peace; and peace, riches.

The shortest way to be rich, is not by enlarging our estates, but by contracting our desires. A great fortune in the hands of a fool, is a great misfortune. The more riches a fool has, the greater fool he is.

VI. PERSEVERANCE.—It is astonishing to see how much can be done by perseverance. Jessie is not so smart as either of her sisters, yet it strikes me, she will grow up the most sensible woman of the three; and what do you think is the reason? Why, because she never says she can not do a thing, but tries, over and over again, till she does it.



## PART THIRD.—SYNTAX.

### LESSON 38.—Analysis of Sentences.

**331. Syntax** is that part of Grammar which treats of the proper **arrangement** and **connection** of words in a sentence.

**332. A Proposition** is a single statement or affirmation; as, "*Bees make honey.*"—" *It will be cold in winter.*"

**333. A Sentence** is such an assemblage of words as *expresses a proposition* and makes complete sense;\* as, *John studies.*—*He will leave to-morrow.*—*Buy the book, if it is a good one.*—*Go to school early.*—*Do you go to school?*

**334. A Clause** is a sentence used in another sentence to *limit* it, or any part of it; as, *If John study, he will improve.* (388.) It is an element of a sentence containing within itself a subject and a predicate.

**335. A Phrase** is two or more words rightly put together, but not making complete sense or expressing a proposition; as "*A good boy.*" "*By and by.*" "*In truth, he did it.*"

**336.** The term *phrase*, in grammar is now generally limited to the *preposition and its regimen* as an adjunct of the antecedent term. (309.)

**337. Infinitives** and *Participles* with their regimen are clauses. (See Anal. 136.)

**338.** A word, phrase, or clause used to qualify or limit another word, is called an *adjunct*.

**339.** When the adjunct is in the predicate and *affirmed* of the subject, it is called an *attribute*; as, *Snow is white.*

### EXERCISES.

[In the following, which are **sentences**?—which are **clauses**?—which are **phrases**?—which are **adjuncts**?—which adjuncts are **attributes**?]

\* The word "proposition" refers to the substance of what is stated. The sentence is the language which expresses it.

Ice is cold.—In truth.—God is good.—Life is short, and it should be well improved.—Truth will prevail.—Birds sleep in the open air, and awake early in the morning.—To be sure.—The grass of the prairies is good food for cattle.—How many men were there?—Listen to good advice.

### LESSON 39.—Parts of a Sentence.

**340.** Every sentence consists of two parts,—the **Subject** and the **Predicate**.

**341.** The **Subject** is that of which the affirmation is made; as, "*Life is short.*" "*Birds sing.*" "*Haste makes waste.*"

**342.** The subject of a sentence is commonly a *noun* or *pronoun*, or a clause used as a substantive; as, *God is good*; *he does good*.—*To be a good scholar* is an honor.—"*That the world is a sphere*, has been abundantly shown."—"Dust thou art, to dust returnest, was not spoken of the soul."

**343.** The **Predicate** is that which is affirmed of the subject; as, "*Life is short.*" "*Rome was not built in a day.*"

**344.** The predicate properly consists of two parts—the **attribute** affirmed of the subject, and the **copula**, by which the affirmation is made. Thus, in the sentence, "*God is love*," *God* is the subject, and *is love* is the predicate, in which *love* is the attribute, and *is* the copula.

**345.** In the analysis of a sentence, first find the **entire subject**, and the **entire predicate**, before any discussion of individual words; for although there is generally a leading substantive, and always a principal verb, yet for the purposes of discourse the affirmation is made not of the noun simply, but of all the words, phrases, and clauses that limit it—and although it is the verb that affirms, yet the affirmation is incomplete unless we also take into account all the elements that modify the verb. The following are examples:—

| Subject.             | Predicate.                     |
|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| Birds                | fly.                           |
| Grass                | is green.                      |
| Good boys            | obey their parents.            |
| A good man           | is respected by all.           |
| A bad man            | is not respected.              |
| The lazy boy         | moves slowly.                  |
| The active boy       | moves rapidly.                 |
| The man whom you saw | came while you were gone.      |
| The industrious man  | enjoys the fruit of his labor. |

NOTE.—The teacher should illustrate fully by use of the blackboard, questioning the pupils until this distinction is perfectly understood.

346. The *attribute* and *copula* are often expressed by one word, which in that case must be a *verb*; as, "The fire *burns*," = "The fire is *burning*." Hence,

347. The *attribute* may be a *noun* or *pronoun*, an *adjective*, a *preposition with its case*, an *adverb*, an *infinitive* or *part of a sentence*, connected with the subject by an *attributive verb* as a *copula*.<sup>1</sup>

348. The *attributive verbs* are such as, *be, become, seem*, etc.; and the passive forms of *deem, call, name, consider*, etc.; as, He *became* wise. He *was called* a benefactor.<sup>2</sup>

349. The *Verb* of the predicate is called the *Affirmer*.

#### EXERCISES.

[In the following sentences mention the **affirmer** of each predicate—the **attribute**—the **copula**. Mention the *subject* of each—the *predicate* of each.]

Snow is white.—Ice is always cold.—Birds fly.—Home should be pleasant.—The fields are green in the spring.—Be sure that truth will prevail.—Does he go to school?—To learn a lesson well is commendable.—The man saw him.—Horses eat hay.—John and Jane will come, if invited.—Crows are never the whiter for washing themselves.—Between virtue and vice, there is no middle path:

[Write additional sentences, with another predicate for each of these subjects, and another subject for each predicate.]

## LESSON 40.—Classes of Sentences.

**350.** Sentences as to the **Form** of the affirmation or mode of expressing it, are divided into *four* classes, viz.:

1. **Declaratory**, or such as declare a thing; as, "God is love."

2. **Interrogatory**, or such as ask a question; as, "Lovest thou me?"

3. **Imperative**, or such as express a command, entreaty, etc. (218); as, "John, go home." "Grant me my request."

4. **Exclamatory**, or such as contain an exclamation; as, "See how he runs!"

**351.** Sentences are **Transitive**, **Intransitive**, or **Attributive**, according to the kind of verb in the predicate. (181, 182, 183.)

**352.** As to the **Number of Propositions** they contain, sentences are divided into *two* classes, **Single** and **Compound**.

**353.** A **Single Sentence**<sup>1</sup> expresses only *one* proposition; as, "John runs."—"John runs faster than the dog."—"I will go if the sun shines."—"John and James left the table."

**354.** A **Compound Sentence** consists of two or more single sentences so united as to express *several related propositions*; <sup>2</sup> as, "John runs and James walks."—"The wicked flee when no man pursueth, but the righteous are as bold as a lion."

## EXERCISES.

[State which of the following sentences are **single**, which **compound**, and of each whether declaratory, interrogatory, imperative, or exclamatory, and why?—**transitive**, **intransitive**, or **attributive**, and why?]

Birds fly.—Do any fish fly?—He is a gentleman and a scholar.—Bring me the book and I will read it.—Write

'to me.—Ah! I see it.—The tide rises twice in twenty-four hours.—The land is good, but the buildings are old.—Do you intend to buy the farm?—Yes; and I shall build a house on it.—By improving the land I shall have better crops.—Who made the noise?—Charles, sir.

### LESSON 41.—Single Sentences.

**355. Single Sentences** (expressing only **one** complete proposition) are of three kinds, viz., **Simple**, **Composite**, and **Complex**.

**356.** A *Simple Sentence* contains but one subject, one affirmer, and, if transitive or attributive, one object or attribute; as, Horses run.—John strikes Thomas.—Sugar is sweet.—The boy reads (the paper).

**357.** The *Simple Sentence* may be *enlarged*<sup>1</sup>—1. By an *adjunct* word or phrase in any or all of its parts; as “*Wise men use rightly their time.*” 2. By the substitution of a *clause* for its subject, object, or attribute; as, “*To be angry is to be mad.*”

**358.** The *Composite Sentence*, in expressing one proposition, may have *two or more subjects, affirmers, objects, or attributes*, and is said to be *compound in the part* thus affected; as, “*Time and tide wait for no man.*” “*He studies and recites grammar.*” “*The sky is bright and clear.*”

**359.** The *Complex Sentence* is a single sentence containing a *subordinate* or *dependent clause* which limits the principal clause, or some part of it; as, “*The boy who studies will excel.*” “*We will go when the train leaves.*”

#### EXERCISES.

[In the following single sentences, which are **simple**? which are **composite** with compound subject? with compound predicate? which are **complex** sentences, and why?]

Grass is green.—Wood and coal will burn.—Coal burns readily when properly ignited.—He can read and

write well.—I will finish the work when you wish me.—  
If the road is good, we can travel fast.—I bought a book  
and a slate for a good boy.—And now abideth faith, hope,  
and charity.—That is gold which is worth gold.—Learn  
to unlearn what you have learned amiss.

### LESSON 42.—The Subject.

**360.** The **subject** of a sentence is either *grammatical* or *logical*.

**361.** The *grammatical* subject is the person or thing spoken of, *unlimited* by other words; as, "*Horses are strong.*"

**362.** The *logical* subject is the person or thing spoken of, together with all the words, phrases, or clauses by which it is limited or defined. Thus: in the sentence, "Every man at his best estate is vanity,"—the grammatical subject is "*man*;" the logical subject is, "*Every man at his best estate.*"

**363.** A *relative clause* which limits a grammatical subject is called an *adjective adjunct*; as, "The boy *who studies* will improve."—(*Studios boy.*)<sup>1</sup>

**364.** When the grammatical subject has *no limiting words* connected with it, then it and the logical subject are the same; as, "God is good."—"Birds sing sweetly in the spring."

**365.** The **subject** of a proposition is either *simple* or *compound*.

**366.** A *simple subject* consists of one subject of thought; as, *Snow is white.* The boiler of the steamboat exploded.

**367.** A *compound subject* consists of two or more simple subjects, to which belongs the same predicate; as, *You and I are friends.*—*Time and tide wait for no man.*—*Two and three are five.*

### EXERCISES.

[In the following sentences, which is the **grammatical**, and which

<sup>1</sup> Anal —115.

the **logical** subject? State whether *simple* or *compound*—*limited* or *unlimited*. Distinguish the *simple* and the *compound* subject. Point out the subject and the predicate in each.]

The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom.—All men have not faith.—The memory of the just is blessed.—Happy is the man that findeth wisdom.—The blessing of the Lord maketh rich.—Wise men lay up knowledge.—The rich and the poor meet together.—Wealth makes many friends.—James and John are cousins.—A grammatical subject is unlimited.—Some dogs are savage.—The white horse died.

[**Write** predicates to the following compound subjects:]

John and James.—He and she.—You and I.—The rich and poor.—Virtue and vice.—Heat and cold.

### LESSON 43.—Modifications of the Subject.

**368.** A **grammatical subject**, being a noun or pronoun, *may be modified*, limited, or described in various ways; as,

1. By a **noun in apposition**; <sup>1</sup> as, "Milton, the poet, was blind."
2. By a noun in the **possessive case**; as, "Aaron's rod budded."
3. By an **adjunct phrase**; as, "The works of Nature are beautiful."
4. By an **adjective word** (i.e. an article, adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle); as, "A good name is better than riches."
5. By a **relative** and its clause; as, "He who does no good, does harm."
6. By an **infinitive clause**; as, "A desire to learn is praiseworthy."
7. By a **clause in apposition**; as, "The fact that he was a scholar, was manifest."

102      MODIFICATIONS OF THE MODIFYING WORDS.

8. Each grammatical subject may have *several* modifications; as, "*Several stars of less magnitude which we had not observed before now appeared.*"

369. When the grammatical subject is an *infinitive*, or a *participle* used as a noun, it may be *modified* like the verb in the predicate (384).—

EXERCISES.

[In the following sentences, point out the **grammatical** subject—the **logical**—and state how the grammatical subject is modified.]

A wise man foreseeth evil.—Wisdom's ways are pleasantness.—Treasures of wickedness profit nothing.—He that walketh uprightly walketh surely.—Nature does nothing in vain.—Socrates, the philosopher, died by poison.—A desire to excel will stimulate to exertion.

LESSON 44.—Modifications of the Modifying Words.

370. **Modifying or limiting words** may themselves be modified.

1. A **noun** modifying another may itself be modified in all the ways in which a noun, being a grammatical subject, is modified.
  2. An **adjective** qualifying a noun may itself be modified—
    - (1.) By an **adjunct phrase**; as, "Be a man just *in your dealings.*"
    - (2.) By an **adverb**; as, "A *truly* good man hateth evil."
    - (3.) By an **infinitive**; as, "Be swift *to hear*, slow *to speak.*"
  3. An **adverb** may be modified—
    - (1.) By an **adjunct phrase**; as, "Agreeably *to Nature.*"
    - (2.) By ~~another~~ **adverb**; as, "Yours, *very* sincerely."
371. A **modified grammatical subject** regarded as



a complex idea, may itself be modified ;<sup>1</sup> as, "The *old black* horse is dead ;" "The *first two lines* are good."

## EXERCISES.

[In the following sentences, by what words are the **modifying nouns** modified ?—the **adjectives** ?—the **adverbs** ?]

Great wealth properly used is a blessing.—The very best remedy for certain evils is exercise.—Truly great men are far above worldly pride.—Your very kind letter has been received.—The river flows very rapidly.

## LESSON 45.—The Predicate.

**372.** I. The **predicate**, like the subject, is either *grammatical* or *logical*.

**373.** The *grammatical* predicate consists of the *attribute* and *copula*, not modified by other words.

**374.** The *attribute*, which together with the copula forms the predicate, may be expressed by a *noun* or *pronoun*—James is a *scholar*—James is *he* ; an *adjective*—James is *diligent* ; a *participle*—James is *learned* ; a *preposition with its regimen*—James is *in health* ; and sometimes an *adverb*—John is not *so*.

**375.** The *attribute* is also expressed by an infinitive or other dependent *clause* ; as, "To obey is *to enjoy*."—"The order is *that we must go*."

**376.** The *logical* predicate is the grammatical, together with all the words and phrases and clauses that modify it :—Thus, "Nero was cruel to his subjects,"—*grammatical* predicate, "was cruel"—*logical*, "was cruel to his subjects."

**377.** When the grammatical predicate has no modifying terms connected with it, the grammatical and logical predicates are the same ; as, "Life is *short*."—"Time *flies*."

**378.** II. The predicate, like the subject, is either *simple* or *compound*.

---

<sup>1</sup>A. & P. Gr.—689.

**379.** A *simple* predicate ascribes to its subject but *one* attribute; as, "Truth *is mighty*."

**380.** A *compound* predicate consists of *two or more* simple predicates, affirmed of the same subject; as, "Truth *is mighty and will prevail*."

### EXERCISES.

[In the following sentences, name the subject and the predicate—state whether the predicate is **simple** or **compound**—tell what is the **grammatical**, and what is the **logical** predicate.]

The wind blows.—The fire burns.—Man is mortal.—Wisdom is the principal thing.—He that tilleth his land shall be satisfied with bread.—The way of a fool is right in his own eyes.—A soft answer turneth away wrath.—The fields are green.—Cæsar came, saw, and conquered.—John reads and writes well.—The cities of the enemy were plundered and burned to the ground.—The night was dark and rainy.—He is a colonel in the regular army.

### LESSON 46.—Modifications of the Predicate.

**381.** A **grammatical predicate** may be **modified** or limited in various ways.

**382.** When the attribute in the grammatical predicate is a **noun**, it is modified—

1. By a *noun* or *pronoun* limiting or describing the attribute; as, "He is John *the Baptist*."—"He ~~is~~ my friend."—"He is *my father's* friend."
2. By an *adjective* or *participle* limiting the attribute; as, "Solomon was a *wise* king."

**383.** When the affirmer (**349**) **contains the attribute**, it may be modified—

1. By a *noun* or *pronoun* in the *objective* case, as the object of the verb; as, "We love *him*."—"John reads Homer."

2. By an *adverb*; as, "John reads *well*."
3. By an *adjunct*; as, "They live *in London*."
4. By an *infinitive*; as, "Boys love *to play*."
5. By a *substantive clause*; as, "Plato taught *that the soul is immortal*."

—384. An *infinitive* or *participle* may be modified in all respects as the finite verb in the predicate.

\* \* The *object* of a transitive sentence, or any substantive in the objective case, may be modified in all the ways in which a subject may be modified.

385. A *modifying clause*, if a dependent proposition, may be modified in both its subject and predicate as other propositions.

386. All *other modifying words* may themselves be modified, as similar words are, when modifying the subject.

387. *Several modifications* are sometimes connected with the same predicate; as, "He reads a good book carefully every evening."

### EXERCISES.

[In the following sentences, distinguish the **grammatical predicate**—state whether the attribute is a noun, or whether it is contained in the affirmer or verb—state how it is modified.]

His father and mother are dead: they died a year ago.—Hannibal crossed the Alps.—Livy and Tacitus were Roman historians.—His intention was to destroy the fleet.—Time flies rapidly.—Sincerity and truth are the basis of every virtue.—I wish that he would come soon.

### LESSON 47.—Limiting Clauses.

388. *Clauses* limiting single sentences, or the members of compound sentences, may be classified as to their **office** into *substantive*, *adnominal*, and *adverbial*.

**389.** A *substantive* clause performs the office of a *noun*; as, "*That I said so is most true.*"—"He loves *to do right.*"

**390.** An *adnominal* clause limits like an *adjective*; as, "The boy *whose studies* will improve."—"The master directed him *to study.*"—"Admired, he became vain."

**391.** An *adverbial* clause performs the office of an *adverb*; as, "He goes to school *to learn.*"—"He is wiser *than his brother.*"

**392.** The clause on which another depends is called the *leading clause*, its subject the *leading subject*, and its predicate the *leading predicate*.

**393.** In a *complex* single sentence, the dependent clauses are usually connected by *relatives*, *conjunctive adverbs*, or *conjunctions*; thus—

*Relative.*—"The apples *that are in the basket* are sold."

*Conjunctive Adverb.*—"We shall go *when the cars go.*"

*Conjunction.*—"The miser lives poor *that he may die rich.*"

**394.** The *connecting word* is sometimes *omitted*; as, "This is the book (which) I lost."

**395.** A *dependent clause* is frequently *abridged* by omitting the connecting word and changing the verb of the predicate into a participle or infinitive; as, "When we have finished our lessons, we will play."—Abridged, "Having finished our lessons, we will play."

**396.** When the dependent clause is the *object* of the verb in the leading clause, it may often be changed for the *infinitive with a subject*; as, "I know that he is a scholar."—Abridged, "I know *him to be* a scholar."

**397.** When in such cases the *subject* of the *dependent* clause is the same as the subject of the principal clause, it is *omitted* in the abridged form; as, "I wished *that I might go.*"—Abridged, "I wished *to go.*"

**398.** A *dependent clause* may be *abridged* by sub-

*stituting* & equivalent qualifying word or an adjunct; as,  
 "The man *who is honest* will be respected."—Abridged, "The  
*honest* man will be respected."

## EXERCISES.

[1. **Abridge** the following propositions, and **write** them out:]

When our work is finished, we will play.—When I had  
 visited Europe, I returned to America.—It is said that  
 "the love of money is the root of all evil;" daily observation  
 shows that it is so.

[2. **Extend** the following abridged propositions, and **write** them:]

Time past can never be recalled.—The road leading to  
 the castle was blocked up.—I know it to be genuine.—  
 You know him to be your friend.—We hold these prin-  
 ciples to be self-evident.—His being successful is doubtful.  
 —The war being ended, trade revived.

## LESSON 48.—Compound Sentences.

**399.** A **compound sentence** consists of two or  
 more single sentences so united as to express several  
 related propositions; as, "The man walked, *and* the  
 boy ran."

**400.** The propositions which make up a compound  
 sentence are called **members**.

**401.** The **members** of a compound sentence are **gram-  
 matically independent** of each other; each will make  
 sense by itself.

\* \* After stating the members, and how they are con-  
 nected, analyze each as if it were a single sentence.

**402.** The members of a **compound** sentence are **con-  
 nected** by such conjunctions as *and*, *or*, *nor*, *but*, *yet*, etc.;  
 as, "The harvest is passed, the summer is ended, and we  
 are not saved."

In such sentences, the connective is often omitted.

*EXERCISES.*

[1. In the following sentences, state which are **single**, and which are **compound**. In the compound sentences, point out the **members**.]

We may not always have time to read, but we always have time to reflect.—Time passes quickly, though it appears to move slowly.—Care for yourself, and others will care for you.—The eyes of the Lord are in every place beholding the evil and the good.—Righteousness exalteth a nation.—John is taller than I, though I am older than he.

[2. In the following compound sentences, name the **members**—name the **connecting words**.]

The weather was fine, and the roads were excellent, but we were unfortunate in our companions.—Beauty attracts admiration, as honor (attracts) applause.—Time is ever advancing, but it leaves behind it no traces of its flight.—When I was a child I spake as a child, but when I became a man I put away childish things.—He may go, or he may stay.—He was not a good speaker, yet he was an admirable writer.

*Classification of Sentences.*

|            |                            |   |
|------------|----------------------------|---|
| SENTENCES. | 1. FORM . . . . .          | <div>Declaratory.</div> <div>Interrogatory.</div> <div>Imperative.</div> <div>Exclamatory.</div>  |
|            | 2. NATURE OF AFFIRMATION.  | <div>Transitive.</div> <div>Intransitive.</div> <div>Attributive.</div>   |
|            | 3. NUMBER OF PROPOSITIONS. | <div>Single . . . . .</div> <div>Compound . . .</div> <div> <div>Simple.</div> <div>Composite.</div> <div>Complex.</div> </div> <div> <div> <div>Subject.</div> <div>Atfirmer.</div> <div>Object.</div> <div>Attribute</div> </div> <div>No logical relation.</div> <div>Logical sequence.</div> </div> |

## LESSON 49.—Directions for Analysis.

**403.** 1. State whether the sentence is *single* or *compound*; whether *transitive*, *intransitive*, or *attributive*; whether *declaratory*, *interrogatory*, *imperative*, or *exclamatory*.

2. If single, state whether it is *simple*, *composite*, or *complex*.

3. Name the *logical subject* and the *logical predicate*.

4. Name the *grammatical subject*.

5. Show by what words, phrases, or clauses, if any, the grammatical subject is *modified* in the logical.

6. Show by what modifying words, if any, each *modifying word* is modified.

7. Name the *grammatical predicate*.

8. Show by what words, phrases, or clauses, if any, it is *modified* in the logical.

9. Show by what modifying words, phrases, or clauses, if any, each *modifying word* is modified.

10. If the sentence is *compound*, mention the *members*.

11. Show *how* the members are *connected*.

12. Analyze each member *as a single sentence*, by showing its subject, predicate, etc., as above.

N.B.—In analyzing sentences, it will be necessary always to *supply* words left out by ellipsis, and to supply the antecedent to the relative *what*, and to the compound relatives *whoever*, *whosoever*, *whatever*, *whatsoever*; making also the change which is necessary in the relatives themselves, when the antecedent is supplied.<sup>1</sup>

*Models of Analysis.*

**404.** 1. God is good.

This is a *single* sentence, simple, because it contains a single affirmation; *declaratory* because it declares something; *attributive*—it affirms the attribute *good* of the subject *God*.

<sup>1</sup>A. & P. Gr.—266.

**God** is the logical subject, because it is that of which the quality *good* is affirmed.

**Is good** is the logical predicate, because it affirms of its subject. **Is** is the verb or copula, and **good** is the attribute.

In this sentence, the grammatical subject and predicate are the same as the logical, because they are not modified by other words.

Or, more briefly, thus:—The logical subject is **God**. The logical predicate is **is good**, in which **is** is the verb or copula, and **good** the attribute. The grammatical subject and predicate are the same as the logical.

2. The fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom.

This is a *single* sentence, *simple, declaratory, attributive*.

The logical subject is *The fear of the Lord*.

The logical predicate is *is the beginning of wisdom*.

The grammatical subject is **fear**. It is limited by the adjunct, **of the Lord**, and shown to be limited by the article *the*. (368, 4.)

The grammatical predicate is **is beginning**, in which **is** is the verb or copula, and **beginning** the attribute. It is modified by the adjunct *of wisdom*, and shown to be limited by *the*. (382).

3. Two and two make four.

This is a *single* sentence, *composite* (with a *compound subject*), *declaratory, transitive*.

The logical subject is **two and two**, compound.

The logical predicate is **make four**.

The grammatical subject is the same as the logical.

The grammatical predicate is **make**; it is modified by its object **four**.

4. Will the king fight and not conquer?

This is a *single* sentence, *composite* (with a *compound predicate*), *interrogatory, used intransitively*, (object omitted.)



The logical subject is *the king*.

The logical predicate is *will fight and not conquer*, compound.

The grammatical subject is the same as the logical.

The first grammatical predicate is *will fight*; the second is *not conquer*; they are connected by *and*.

5. Remember now thy Creator in the days of thy youth.

This is a *single* sentence, *simple, imperative, transitive*.

The logical subject is *thou* understood.

The grammatical subject is the same as the logical.

The logical predicate is *Remember now thy Creator in the days of thy youth*.

The grammatical predicate is *Remember*. It is modified by *now*, an adverb of time, also by its object *Creator*, limited by the possessive adjective pronoun *thy*. It is further modified by the adjuncts *in the days of thy youth*. In the first of these adjuncts, the term *days* is limited by the second adjunct, and shown to be so by the definite article *the*.

6. A good man does what (= that which) is right, from principle.

This is a single sentence, complex, declaratory, transitive, containing one leading affirmation and one dependent clause, connected by *which*.

The logical subject of the whole sentence is *A good man*; the logical predicate is *does what is right from principle*.

The leading affirmation is *A good man does that from principle*.

The dependent clause is *which is right*, and is restrictive of *that* in the leading proposition, the antecedent to *which*, the connecting word.

In the *first* or leading clause—

The logical subject is *A good man*.

The logical predicate is *does that from principle*.

The grammatical subject is *man*, qualified by *good*, and shown to be indefinite by *a*.

The grammatical predicate is *does*, modified by its object *that*,

and the adjunct *from principle*; *that* is modified by the relative clause.

In the *second* or dependent clause—

The logical subject is *which*. It also connects its clause with the antecedent *that*, and restricts it.

The logical predicate is *is right*, in which *is* is the verb or copula, and *right* is the attribute.

The grammatical subject and predicate are the same as the logical.<sup>1</sup>

7. Righteousness exalteth a nation; but sin is a reproach to any people.

This is a compound sentence, consisting of two members, connected by *but*. Declaratory.

The first member, "Righteousness exalteth a nation," is single, simple sentence, transitive, of which

The logical subject is *Righteousness*.

The logical predicate is *exalteth a nation*.

The grammatical subject is the same as the logical.

The grammatical predicate is *exalteth* (265). It is modified by its object *nation*, and this is shown to be used indefinitely by the article *a* prefixed.

The second member, *sin is a reproach to any people*, is also a single, simple sentence, attributive, and connected with the preceding member by the conjunction *but*, expressing contrast or opposition.

Of this member, the logical subject is *sin*.

The logical predicate is *is a reproach to any people*.

The grammatical subject is the same as the logical.

The grammatical predicate is *is a reproach*, of which *is* is the copula, and *reproach* the attribute, shown to be used indefinitely by the article *a* prefixed. It is modified by the adjunct *to any people*. In this adjunct, the word *people* is used in a general or unlimited sense, as intimated by the indefinite adjective pronoun *any* prefixed.

---

<sup>1</sup> A. & P. Gr.—610, 624.

## EXERCISES.

[Thus **analyze** the following sentences:]

Man is mortal.—All men are mortal.—The man and woman arrived to-day.—He sold his horse and wagon.—The hand of the diligent maketh rich.—The love of money is the root of all evil.—A friend in need is a friend indeed.—He that trusteth in his riches shall fall.—If I do not go you must.—The fire burns fiercely when the wind blows it.—It was I who wrote the letter, and he carried it to the post-office.—He gave the book to some one, I know not to whom.

## LESSON 50.—Construction of Sentences.

**405. Words** are **arranged** in sentences, according to certain **rules**, called the *Rules of Syntax*.

**406. General Principles.**

1. In every *sentence* there must be a *verb* and its *subject*, expressed or understood.
2. Every *article*, *adjective*, *adjective pronoun*, or *participle*, must have a substantive, expressed or understood.
3. Every *subject* has its own *verb*, expressed or understood.
4. Every *finite verb* (that is, every verb not in the infinitive or participial mood) has its own *subject* in the nominative case, expressed or understood.
5. Every *possessive case* limits a noun or substantive.
6. Every *objective case* is the object of a transitive verb in the active voice, or of a preposition; or denotes circumstances of *time*, *value*, *weight*, or *measure*. (**473.**)
7. The *infinitive mood* depends upon a verb, noun, or adjective.
8. Every *adverb* limits a verb, adjective, or adverb.

9. *Conjunctions* unite words and phrases that stand in the same relation in a sentence. They also serve to connect members and clauses in complex and compound sentences.

\* \* The exceptions to these general principles will appear in the Rules of Syntax.

### *Parts of Syntax.*

407. The *Rules of Syntax* may all be referred to three heads; viz., *Concord*, or *agreement*, *Government*, and *Position*.

408. *Concord* is the *agreement* one word has with another in gender, number, case, or person.

409. *Government* is the *power* which one word has in determining the mood, tense, or case of another word. The word governed by another word is called its *regimen*. (309.)

410. *Position* means the *place* which a word occupies in relation to other words in a sentence.

\* \* In the English language, which has but few inflections, the *meaning* of a sentence often depends much on the *position*<sup>1</sup> of its words.

## LESSON 51.—Substantives in Apposition.

411. RULE I.—**Substantives** denoting the **same person or thing**, agree in case; as, *Cicero, the orator. Carlo, the large dog, is dead.*

412. Words thus used are said to be in *apposition*.

413. EXPLANATION.—A noun is placed in apposition after another noun, to express some *attribute, description, or appellation*, belonging to it. Both nouns must be in the same member of the sentence, that is, in the subject, or the predicate. This Rule applies to all words used substantively, and it is only when the word in apposition is a pronoun that there is any danger of error, because in pronouns only the nominative and objective are different in form. The word

<sup>1</sup> A. & P. Gr.—541, 755, 759, 832.

## ADJECTIVE AND SUBSTANTIVE

In apposition is sometimes connected with the preceding by the words *as, being,* and the like.

### EXERCISES.\*

[1. In the following Exercise, point out the words in **apposition**. See if they are in the same case. If they are, the sentence is right; if not, it is **wrong**, and must be corrected. In the following, some sentences are **right**, others **wrong**.]

First in the hearts of his countrymen is Washington, the hero, the statesman, and the patriot.—La Fayette, the friend of Washington, is no more.—Your brother has returned, him who went abroad.—I bought this paper from a bookseller, he who lives opposite; will you please to give it to that boy, he that stands by the door?—Is your sister well, her that was lately sick?—Hand that book to John, he who reads so well.—The premium for the best writer is given to Thomas, he who took so much pains to excel.—Brutus slew Cæsar, him who was the great conqueror.—Solomon, king of Israel, built a temple for Jehovah, his Lord.—The President, Lincoln, was assassinated.—Us, boys, were there.—Him, being a child, was forgiven.

[2. **Write correct sentences**, each to contain a noun, or a noun and its pronoun, in apposition.]

## LESSON 52.—Adjective and Substantive.

**414. RULE II.**—1. *An adjective or a participle qualifies the substantive to which it belongs; as, "A good man." "A horse wearied by labor."*

An adjective used as an *attribute* (344) in the predicate must qualify the subject;<sup>1</sup> as, "*Sugar is sweet.*"

\* N.B.—Throughout the Exercises in Syntax—first, **correct** the errors, and **write the exercises** as corrected; second, **analyze** orally the sentences corrected; thirdly, parse any word etymologically; and, lastly, parse syntactically the word or words to which the rule refers. (552.)

2. *Adjectives denoting one qualify nouns in the singular—adjectives denoting more than one qualify nouns in the plural*; as, “*This man.*” “*These men.*” “*Six feet.*”

**415.** EXPLANATION.—This Rule applies to *all adjective words*, namely, *adjectives*, *adjective pronouns*, and *participles*. Those being indeclinable in English, there is danger of error only in the use of such as imply number.

### Observations.

**416.** Adjectives denoting *one* are *this*, *that*, *one*, *each*, *every*, *either*, *neither*; and the ordinal numerals, *first*, *second*, *third*, etc.

**417.** Adjectives denoting *more than one* are *these*, *those*, *many*, *several*; and the cardinal numerals, *two*, *three*, *four*, etc.

**418.** Some adjectives implying number can be joined with either *singular or plural* nouns, according to the sense; as, *some*, *no*, etc.; thus, *Some man—some men*

**419.** EXCEPTION.—When a *noun* following the numeral is used in an *adjective sense* (109), it has not the plural termination; thus, we say, A *four inch* plank; a *three foot* wall; a *four horse* team; a *ten acre* field, etc.

**420.** *Adjectives* should not be used as *adverbs*; thus, *miserable poor*; sings *elegant*, should be, *miserably poor*; sings *elegantly*.<sup>1</sup>

**421.** When two or more objects are contrasted, *this* and *these* refer to the last mentioned, *that* and *those* to the first; as, “*Virtue and vice* are opposite qualities; *that* ennobles the mind, *this* debases it.”

**422.** COMPARISON.—1. When *two objects* are compared, the *comparative* degree is commonly used; when *more than two*, the *superlative*; as, “He is *taller* than his father.” “John is *tallest* amongst us.”

2. *Double comparatives and superlatives are improper*;

<sup>1</sup> A. & P. Gr.—534.

thus, "James is *more* taller than John,"—omit *more*. "He is the *most* wisest of the three,"—omit *most*.

**423. POSITION.**—An adjective is *generally* put *before* its noun; but in the following instances it is put *after*: 1. When it qualifies a *pronoun*. 2. When *other words* depend on the adjective. 3. When the *quality* results from the *action* expressed by the verb. 4. When the adjective is *predicated*.<sup>1</sup>

•• For other varieties and exceptions, see A. & P. Gr. 677–706.]

### EXERCISES.

¶ In the following Exercise, point out the **adjectives**, and the **substantives** (41) which they qualify. Tell which denotes one, and which more than one, and make the substantives singular or plural as the adjectives require.]

A well six fathom deep.—A pole ten feet long.—A field twenty rod wide.—I have not seen him this ten days.—Those sort of people are common.—~~These~~ kind of things are useless.—You will find the remark in the second or third pages.—Each have their own place, and they know it.—The second and third page were torn.

[2. **Write short sentences**, each of which shall contain an adjective of number (416–418), and a substantive in the number required by the adjective. Thus, *Every man* had a pole *six feet* long.]

## LESSON 53.—The Article.

**424. RULE III.**—1. The article **a** or **an** is put before common nouns in the **singular** number, when used **indefinitely**; as, "A man"—"An apple;" that is, "*any* man"—"*any* apple."

2. The article **the** is put before common nouns, either **singular** or **plural**, when used **definitely**; as, "*The* sun rises"—"*The* city of New York."

**425. EXPLANATION.**—It is impossible to give a precise Rule for the use of the article in every case. The best general rule

<sup>1</sup> A. & P. Gr.—705.

is, to observe what the *sense* requires. The following usages may be noticed. (For others, see A. & P. Gr. 707-728.)

### Observations.

**426.** The article is *omitted* before a noun that is *unlimited*, or that stands for a *whole species*; as, Man is mortal; and before the names of minerals, metals, arts, etc. Some nouns denoting the species have the article always prefixed; as, *The dog* is a more grateful animal than *the cat*. The lion is a noble animal. Others never have it; thus, *Lead* is softer than iron. *Wood* is lighter than stone.

**427.** The *last* of two nouns *after a comparative*, should have no article when they both refer to *one person* or thing; as, He is a better reader than writer.

**428.** When *two or more adjectives*, or epithets, are used to qualify the *same* noun, the article should be placed before the first, and *omitted* before the rest; but when they belong to *different* subjects, the article is *prefixed to each*; thus, "A red and white rose," indicates *one* rose, partly red and partly white. "A red and a white rose," means *two* roses, one red and one white. "Johnson, the bookseller and stationer," denotes *one* person. "Johnson the bookseller, and the stationer," denotes *two*.

### EXERCISES.

[1. The following sentences are wrong only in the use of the article. Show why they are wrong, and correct them.]

A great talents without a virtue are dangerous.—A man is mortal.—A time flies.—The money is scarce.—John is a better farmer than a scholar.—The black and the white spaniel runs fastest.—The black and white spaniel run together.—The time and the tide wait for no man.—A red and a white rose grows on this bush.—The black and white man came together.—Smith, the tanner and currier, entered into partnership.—Smith, the tanner and the currier, is a man of a great industry.

[2. **Write short sentences**, each of which shall contain the article **a** or **an**, or **the**;—others, which shall contain nouns **without an article**.



## LESSON 54.—Personal Pronouns.

**429. RULE IV.**—**Personal pronouns** agree with the words for which they stand, in **gender, number, and person**; as, All that a man hath, will he give for his life.

**EXPLANATION.**—Only *personal* and *possessive* pronouns have *different forms* for the several genders, numbers and persons, and this Rule means, that when any of these pronouns is used, it must be of the same gender, number, and person, with the noun for which it stands.

*Special Rules.*

**430. RULE 1.** When a pronoun refers to **two or more words taken together**, it becomes *plural*, and if the words are of different persons, it prefers the *first person* to the *second*, and the *second* to the *third*; as, "He and she did THEIR duty."—"John and you and I will do our duty."

**431. RULE 2.** When a pronoun refers to **two or more words in the singular, taken separately**; or to one of them exclusively, it must be *singular*; as, "A clock or a watch moves merely as it is moved."

**432. RULE 3.** But if either of the words referred to is *plural*, the pronoun must be *plural* also; as, "Neither he nor they trouble themselves."

*Observations.*

**433.** A pronoun referring to a collective noun in the singular, expressing many as *one whole*, should be in the *neuter singular*; but when the noun expresses many as *individuals*, the pronoun should be *plural*; as, "The army proceeded on its march."—"The court were divided in their opinions."

**434.** The word containing the *answer* to a question ('163), must be in the *same case* as the word that *asks*

it; as, "Who said that?" Ans. "I (said it)." "Whose books are these?" Ans. "John's."

[\*.\* For other Notes and Observations, see A. & P. Gr. 730—741.]

### EXERCISES.

[In the following Exercise, point out the **personal** and **possessive** pronouns (**168**) and the nouns for which they stand. Change the pronoun, if necessary, for one of the same gender, number, and person, with its noun.]

Give to every man their due.—Answer not a fool according to her folly.—Take handfuls of ashes and sprinkle it toward heaven.—Rebecca took raiment and put them upon Jacob.—Thou and he shared it between them.—Who is there? Me.—Who did that? Him.—Whom did you meet? He.—Whose pen is that? Her or mine's.—Virtue forces her way through obscurity, and sooner or later it is sure to be rewarded.

### LESSON 55.—Relative and Antecedent.

**435. RULE V.**—*The relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number and person; as, "Thou who speakest."*—"The book which was lost."

**436. EXPLANATION.**—The relative stands instead of the noun or pronoun called its antecedent, and also connects the idea expressed in its clause with the antecedent, either for the purpose of further *describing* it, or of *limiting and restricting* it. (**158**.) Consequently, the relative is always regarded as of the same gender, person, and number as its antecedent; and if the subject of a finite verb, the verb will be of the same number and person also. The relative has the same form in all genders.

For remarks respecting the antecedent, and the use of *who* and *which*, see Lesson 13.

#### *Special Rules.*

**437. RULE 1.**—*Who is applied to persons or things per-*

sonified; as, "The man *who*."—"The fox *who* had never seen a lion."

**438. RULE 2.**—*Which* is applied to *things*, and inferior animals; as, "The house *which*;" "The dog *which*."

**439. RULE 3.**—*That*, as a relative, is used *instead of who or which*—

1. After the *superlative* degree, the words *same*, *all*, and sometimes *no*, *some*, and *any*; and generally in *restrictive clauses*; as, "It is the best *that* can be got."
2. When the antecedent includes both *persons* and *things*; as, "The man and the horse *that* we saw yesterday."
3. After the *interrogative who*, and sometimes after the *personal* pronoun; as, "Who *that* knows him will believe it."—"I *that* speak in righteousness."
4. Generally, when the propriety of *who* or *which*, is *doubtful*; as, "The child *that* was placed in the midst."

**440. REMARK.**—The *relative* as the *object* of a verb, generally *precedes the verb* on which it depends; as, "The man *whom* I *saw*, is here."—"I have found that *which* I *lost*."

[\*.\* For other remarks, see A. & P. Gr. 743–759.]

### EXERCISES.

[1. Point out the *relative*, and the noun or pronoun to which it refers. Tell the use of the relative and its clause in each sentence. Alter the relative, if necessary, as required by its antecedent, according to SUB-RULE 1. (437.) If the relative is in the nominative, put its verb in the same number and person as the relative or the antecedent. Give a reason for each change.]

The friend *which* I love.—The vice *whom* I hate.—  
There is the dog *who* followed us.—They *which* seek wisdom, find it.—All *which* beauty, all *which* wealth e'er gave.—"I *who* speak unto you, am he."—It is the best situation *which* can be got.—The man and the horse *whom* we saw.

[2. Write ten short sentences, each of which shall contain one or more of the following nouns or pronouns limited by a relative and its clause; viz., *Man, house, dog, tree, field, hat, boot, chair; I, thou, he, we, you, they*; thus, "There is the *man who* makes baskets." Parse the sentences, and tell the number and person of the relative, and why.]

### LESSON 56.—Subject Nominative.

**441. RULE VI.**—*The subject of a finite verb is put in the nominative; as, "I am."—"Thou art."—"He is."—"They are."—"Time flies."*

**442. EXPLANATIONS.**—A *finite* verb is the verb limited by *person* and *number*, i. e. a verb in the indicative, potential, subjunctive, or imperative mood.

**443.** The subject of a finite verb may be a *noun*, a *pronoun*, an *infinitive mood*, a *participle used as a noun*, or a *substantive clause*. Any of these, when the subject of a verb, may be regarded as a substantive in the nominative.<sup>1</sup>

**NOTE.**—In *comparative* sentences,<sup>2</sup> the substantives in the second member must be in the *same case* as the corresponding substantives in the first; as, "One *rice* costs more than many *virtues* (cost)."—"He reads more than *she* (reads)."

#### EXERCISES.

[In each sentence, point out the **verb** and its **subject**. If the subject is not in the right case, change it.]

Him and me are of the same age.—Suppose you and me go.—Them are excellent.—It is probable that her and me will return.—Robert is taller than me, but I am as strong as him.—I am older than him; but he is taller than me.

### LESSON 57.—Nominative Absolute.

**444. RULE VII.**—A *substantive whose case depends on no other word, is put in the nominative absolute*.

<sup>1</sup> A. & P. Gr.—761-767.

<sup>2</sup> Anal.—135.

*Special Rules.*

**445. RULE 1.**—*A substantive with a participle, whose case depends on no other word, is put in the nominative absolute; as, "He being gone, only two remain."*

**446. RULE 2.**—*A substantive denoting a person or thing addressed, without a verb or governing word, is put in the nominative; as, "I remain, dear sir, yours truly." "Plato, thou reasonest well."*

**447. RULE 3.**—*A substantive unconnected in mere exclamation, is put in the nominative; as, "O the times!—O the manners!"*

**448. RULE 4.**—*A substantive used by pleonasm,<sup>1</sup> before an affirmation, is put in the nominative; as, "Your fathers, where are they?"*

**\*\*\*** Under these Rules, a mistake can be made only in the case of **pronouns**.

*EXERCISES.*

[Point out the word in the case **absolute** or **independent**: if wrong, put it in the right case, and state why it should be in the nominative.]

Me being absent, the business was neglected.—Thee being present, he would not tell what he knew.—Oh! happy us, surrounded with so many blessings.—Thee too! Brutus, my son! cried Cæsar overcome.

**LESSON 58.—Verb and its Subject.**

**449. RULE VIII.**—*A verb agrees with its subject in number and person; as, "I read;" "Thou readest;" "He reads;" "We read," etc.*

**450. EXPLANATION.**—This Rule means, that a verb must take the form or termination denoting the same number and person with its subject. This Rule and the Special Rules under it apply, also, when the subject is an infinitive or other clause. See under Rule VI.

## EXERCISES.

[1. In the following Exercises, tell which words are **verbs**—which the **subjects**—whether the verb and its subject agree—and if not, make them agree by putting the verb in the person and number of its subject.]

You was there.—They was absent.—Your brother has been abroad.—Has your sisters come home?—Was you present?—The letters has come.—Fair words costs nothing.—There is no roses with thorns.—So much of ability and merit are seldom found.—In the work of education the order of studies are important.—The value of the jewels are very great.

[2. Take the verb *to write*, and make it agree with *I*—with *you*—with *he*—with *they*—in all the tenses of the indicative mood. Take any other verb, and do the same.]

## LESSON 59.—Verb and its Subject.

*Special Rules under Rule VIII.*

**451. RULE 1.**—A *singular noun* used in a *plural sense*, has a *verb* in the *plural*; as, “Ten sail (meaning ships) are in sight.”

**452. RULE 2.**—Two or more *substantives singular*, taken *together*, have a *verb* in the *plural*; as, “James and John are here.”

**453. Exc.**—But when *substantives* connected by *and* denote one person or thing, the *verb* is *singular*; as, “Why is dust and ashes proud?”

**454. RULE 3.**—Two or more *substantives singular*, taken *separately*, or one to the *exclusion* of the rest, have a *verb* in the *singular*; as, “James or John attends.”—“The dog or the cat makes the noise.”

**455. RULE 4.**—When *substantives* taken together are of *different persons*, the *verb* agrees with the one *next* to it; as, “James or I am in the wrong.” Better, “James is in the wrong, or I am.”

**456. OBS.**—When the *substantives* are of different num-

bers, the plural number is generally placed last; as, "Neither the captain nor the sailors *were* saved."

**457. RULE 5.**—1. A *collective* noun expressing many, considered as *one whole*, has a verb in the *singular*; as, "The company *was* large."

2. But when a *collective* noun expresses many, considered as *individuals*, the verb must be *plural*; as, "My people *do* not consider."

### EXERCISES.

[In the following Exercises, put the verb in the **number** required by the Rule, and give the Rule for the correction.]

- (1.) Forty head of cattle *was* grazing in the meadow.—  
Twelve brace of pigeons *was* sold for one dollar.—(2.) Life and death *is* in the power of the tongue.—Out of the same mouth proceedeth blessing and cursing.—(3.) Either the boy or the girl *were* present.—(4.) I or you *am* to blame.—(5.) The people *was* numerous.—The deer *were* caught.

[2. **Write** the sentences as corrected.]

### LESSON 60.—The Predicate Substantive.

**458. RULE IX.**—The **predicate substantive** after an **attributive verb**, is put in the **same case** as the **subject** before it; as, "It is *I*."—"He shall be called JOHN."—"I took *it* to be HIM."

**459. EXPLANATION.**—Verbs having the same case after as before them, are chiefly those which signify *to be*, or *to become*; passive verbs of *naming*, *making*, *choosing*, and the like; as, "John became a scholar;" "David was made king." The substantive before the finite verb is the *subject*, the one after it is the *predicate*, and the verb is the *copula*. Hence they all form a simple sentence; and though the nouns denote the same person or thing, and are in the same case, they are not in apposition, as in **RULE I**; but the substantive after a verb is predicated of that before it.

## EXERCISES.

[1. In the following Exercises, in each sentence, point out the **verb** to which the Rule applies, and the noun or pronoun before and after it.

2. Tell the case of the one before, and why. Put the one after the verb in the **same case** as the one before it, give the Rule for the change, and show how it applies. Tell the subject and predicate in each sentence.]

It is me.—It could not have been them.—I am certain it was not me.—That is the man who I thought it to be.—Is that thee?—Whom did they say it was?—I understood it to have been he.—Was it me that said so?—It could not have been me; but it might have been him, or her, or both.

[3. **Write similar correct sentences**, in each of which shall be one of the following verbs, with the same case after it as before it, viz., *is, are, became, was made, shall be chosen, to be, to be called, to be appointed*. Apply the Rule as above.]

## LESSON 61.—Object of a Verb.

**460. RULE X.**—*A substantive being the object of a transitive verb in the active voice, is put in the objective case; as, "We love him."—"Whom did you send?"*

**461. EXPLANATION.**—The transitive verb in the active voice, always tells what its subject does to some other person or thing, called its *object*. The rule means, that this *object* must always be put in the *objective case*. This rule is liable to be violated only when the object is a *pronoun*, because in all other words the nominative and the objective case are *alike in form*.—(83.)

**462.** Nouns and personal pronouns in the objective case, are usually placed after the verb—*relative* and *interrogative* pronouns, usually *before* it. (440.)

**463.** The *infinitive* mood, a *participle* used as a noun, or a *substantive clause*, may be the *object* of a transitive active verb; as, "Boys love *to play*."—"He practised *reading aloud*."—"I know *what he will do*."



## EXERCISES.

[1. In the following Exercises, point out the **transitive verb**—its **subject**—its **object**,—put that object in the proper case—tell what the case is, and why.]

He loves her and I.—Did they hurt ye?—We know he and they.—He and they we know.—The friend who I love.—Take care who you admit.—I will not give ye up.—He who you ignorantly worship, declare I unto you.—Let you and I go.—This is the boy who I saw.

[2. **Write a number of sentences**, each of which shall contain a transitive verb in the active voice; such as, *do, have, touch, hurt, love*, etc., followed by a personal pronoun in the proper case. Parse them, and give the Rule.]

*Special Rules.*

**464. RULE 1.**—An *intransitive verb* can have **no object**; as, “Repenting him of his design”—omit *him*.

**465. RULE 2.**—*Intransitive verbs* used in a *transitive sense* (187), govern the objective case;<sup>1</sup> as, “He runs a race.”—“I laugh at him.”

**466. RULE 3.**—*Intransitive verbs* do not admit a *passive voice*, except when used transitively (210); as, “My race is run.”<sup>2</sup>

**467. RULE 4.**—A *transitive verb* does not admit a *preposition* after it; as, “I will not allow of it”—omit *of*.

**468. RULE 5.**—Verbs signifying to *name, appoint, constitute*, and the like, generally govern **two objectives**, viz.: the *direct*, denoting the person or thing acted upon; and the *indirect*, denoting the result of the act expressed; as, “They named him John.”<sup>3</sup>

## EXERCISES UNDER THE SPECIAL RULES.

[Show how the Rule is violated in each of the following sentences, and correct the error.]

(1.) **Robert** plays himself with his lessons.—He lies him down on the grass.—(2.) They expatiated themselves

A. & P. Gr.—<sup>1</sup> 805, 806.    <sup>2</sup> 807.    <sup>3</sup> 810—814.    <sup>3</sup> Anal.—83, 1.

largely.—Planters grow cotton.—Sit thee down.—(3.) I am resolved to go.—Is your father returned?—He is almost perished with cold.—(4.) They do not want for any thing.—His servants ye are, to whom ye obey.—False accusation can not diminish from his real merit.—(5.) He was chosen for a Senator.

## LESSON 62.—Objective after a Preposition.

**469. RULE XI.**—A **substantive** being the **object** of a **preposition**, is put in the **objective case**; as, "To *whom* much is given, of *him* much shall be required."

**470. EXPLANATION.**—This rule can be violated only in the use of pronouns.

**471. *Whom* and *which*** sometimes depend upon a preposition at some distance after them. But this should generally be avoided; thus, "This is he *whom* I gave it to,"—better—"to *whom* I gave it."

**472.** The **preposition** is sometimes **omitted**. It is then said to be understood; thus, "Give (to) me that book." Here, "*me*" is the objective after "*to*," understood.

### *Special Rule.*

**473. RULE.**—Nouns denoting **time**, **value**, **weight**, or **measure** are commonly put in the **objective case** without a governing word; as, "He was absent six *months* last year."—"It cost a *shilling*."—"It is not worth a *cent*."—"It weighs a *pound*."—"The wall is six *feet* high, and two *feet* thick."

This may be called the objective of **time**, **value**, **weight**, etc.

### EXERCISES.

[1. Point out the **preposition** and the word which is its **object**. Put that word in the proper case, if not in it already. Give the Rule.]

This belongs to my father and I.—Who did you get it from?—Who shall we send it to?—Divide it between

**ye**, or give it to him and I.—This is a small matter between you and I.—Who did you give it to?—Who do you work for?

[2. In this way, **write** a number of short sentences, each of which shall contain a preposition (see the list, **306**), followed by a personal or relative pronoun in the proper case. Parse the sentences, and give the Rule for the case after the preposition.]

**474.** When the prepositions **to**, **at**, **in** stand before names of places, the following usages should be carefully observed, viz.:

1. **To**—is used after words denoting *motion toward*; as, "He went to Spain;" but, in this case, it is omitted before *home*; as, "He went home."
2. **At**—is used before the names of *houses, villages, towns, and foreign cities*; as, "He resides at the Mansion house—at Geneva—at Lisbon."
3. **In**—is used before names of *countries and large cities*; as, "He lives in England—in London." But before these, **at** is used after the verbs *touch, arrive, land*; and sometimes after the verb *to be*.
4. In speaking of one's residence in a city, **at** is used before the number, and **in** (generally understood), before the *street*.
5. **Into**—is used after a verb implying *motion*; as, "He went into the house. **In**, after a verb implying *absence of motion*; as, "He is in the house."

#### EXERCISES.

[**(474.)** In the following sentences, change the preposition used, for **at** which usage requires, and give the special Rule.]

I have been to home all day.—Have you been to Boston?  
—They live in Union Village; formerly they lived at New York.—He has been at England, and has just returned to home.—We touched in France on our way to home.—He lives to Washington, at B Street, but resided formerly in No. 50 Broadway, New York.—I saw him go in the barn a moment since.—Six is contained into thirty, five times.—He is into the store.

[2. **Write short sentences**, each of which shall contain the name of some city, village, county, or state, preceded by a verb or word denoting motion toward, or by the verb *be*, *live*, *dwell*, etc., and the appropriate preposition.]

## LESSON 63.—Prepositions after certain words.

**475. RULE XII.**—*Certain words and phrases should be followed by appropriate prepositions ;*  
Thus—

|  |  |
|--|--|
| Accuse <i>of</i> .   | Diminish <i>from</i> ,—diminution <i>of</i> .  |
| Acquit <i>of</i> .   | Disappointed <i>in</i> what we have,— <i>of</i> what we expect.                          |
| Acquiesce <i>in</i> .  | Discourage <i>from</i> .   |
| Adapted <i>to</i> .  | Discouragement <i>to</i> .   |
| Ask or inquire <i>of</i> a person for what we wish to see— <i>after</i> what we wish to hear of. | Engaged <i>in</i> a work,— <i>for</i> a time.  |
| Believe <i>in</i> , sometimes <i>on</i> .  | Equal <i>to</i> , <i>with</i> .  |
| Betray <i>to</i> a person,— <i>into</i> a thing.   | Exception <i>from</i> ,—sometimes <i>to</i> .  |
| Call <i>on</i> a person,— <i>at</i> a place.   | Expert <i>at</i> (before a noun),— <i>in</i> (before an active participle).              |
| Change <i>for</i> ,— <i>to</i> ,— <i>into</i> .  | Fall <i>under</i> disgrace; <i>from</i> a tree; <i>into</i> a pit; <i>on</i> the ice.    |
| Compare <i>with</i> , in respect to quality,— <i>to</i> , for illustration.                      | Familiar <i>to</i> , <i>with</i> . A thing is familiar <i>to</i> us; we <i>with</i> it.  |
| Confide <i>in</i> .  | Fond <i>of</i> . Free <i>from</i> .  |
| Conformable, consonant <i>to</i> , <i>with</i> .   | Glad <i>of</i> something gained by ourselves — <i>at</i> something that befalls another. |
| Conversant <i>with</i> men, — <i>in</i> things.  | Independent <i>of</i> .  |
| Copy <i>from</i> life, nature,— <i>after</i> a parent.   | Indulge <i>with</i> what is not habitual,— <i>in</i> what is habitual.                   |
| Dependent <i>upon</i> .  | Insist <i>upon</i> .   |
| Die <i>of</i> disease,— <i>by</i> an instrument or violence,— <i>for</i> another.                |  |
| Differ <i>from</i> . Difficulty <i>in</i> .  |  |

|   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| Made <i>of</i> .  | Marry <i>to</i> .  | Regard <i>for</i> ,—in regard <i>to</i> .  |
| Martyr <i>for</i> .   | Need <i>of</i> .   | Share <i>in</i> or <i>of</i> .   |
| Observation <i>of</i> .   | Offensive <i>to</i> .  | Sick <i>of</i> .   |
| Prejudice <i>against</i> .  | Profit <i>by</i> .   | Similar <i>to</i> .  |
| Prevail (to persuade) <i>with</i> , <i>on</i> ,<br><i>upon</i> ,—(to overcome), <i>over</i> ,<br><i>against</i> . | Swerve <i>from</i> .   | Taste (meaning capacity or<br>inclination) <i>for</i> ,—(mean-<br>ing actual enjoyment), <i>of</i> . |
| Protect (others) <i>from</i> ,—(our-<br>selves) <i>against</i> .  | Tax <i>with</i> , (e. g. a crime),— <i>for</i><br>the state. | Unite (transitive) <i>to</i> ; (in-<br>trans.) <i>with</i> .   |
| Provide <i>with</i> or <i>for</i> .   | Value <i>upon</i> , or <i>on</i> .                           | Worthy <i>of</i> ,—sometimes the <i>of</i><br>is understood.   |
| Reconcile (for friendship) <i>to</i> ,<br>(for consistency) <i>with</i> .   |  |  |
| Reduce (to subdue) <i>under</i> ,—<br>(in other cases) <i>to</i> ; as, <i>to</i><br>powder.                       |  |  |

[For additional instances, see A. & P. Gr. §34.]

**476. EXPLANATION.**—As words connected by prepositions, are differently related, care must be taken to employ the preposition which best expresses the relation intended. The sense and the practice of correct writers will here be our best guide. The preceding are only a few examples out of many.

**477. OBS.**—The *same* preposition that follows a *verb* or *adjective*, usually follows the *noun* derived from it; as, Confide *in*,—confidence *in*,—confident *in*.

**478. What preposition** to use often depends as much upon what *follows*, as upon what goes before; as, "To fall from a height"—"into a pit"—"in battle."

### EXERCISES.

[1. **Change the preposition** where necessary in each of the following sentences, for that required by the Rule.]

He was accused with robbery, and acquitted from the charge.—I have been calling upon an old friend.—Call in the post office.—I differ with you in that matter.—John died by consumption, Henry died of the sword, and Robert is sick with the jaundice.—Try to profit from

experience.—You have a taste of poetry.—Conversant in men and things.—Compare this piece to that, and see which is the best.—I could never bear the taste for tobacco.—This is an exception against the general rule.

[2. **Write short sentences**, each of which shall contain one or more of the words in the preceding table, followed by the appropriate preposition.]

## LESSON 64.—The Possessive Case.

**479. RULE XIII.**—*A substantive that limits the signification of another, denoting a different person or thing,<sup>1</sup> must be put in the possessive case ; as, "Virtue's reward."*—"John's books."—"The sun's rays."

**480. EXPLANATION.**—The noun or pronoun in the *possessive*, always *limits the noun* that governs it, and denotes a *different* person or thing : Thus, "Virtue's reward ;" the latter word does not mean reward in general, or any indefinite reward, but a particular reward, viz., Virtue's. —This Rule applies to the relative pronoun, and to the possessive case of the personal pronoun, when the noun denoting the thing possessed is understood ; as, "That book is *mine*." When expressed, the possessor is denoted by the possessive adjective pronoun ;<sup>2</sup> as, "That is *my* book."—

### Observations.

**481.** When several nouns come together in the possessive case, implying *common possession*, the sign of the possessive ('s) is *annexed to the last*, and *understood* to the rest ; as, "Jane and Lucy's books," i. e. books the common property of Jane and Lucy

**482.** But if common possession is *not* implied, or if several words intervene, the sign of the possessive should be *annexed to each* ; as, "Jane's and Lucy's books," i. e. books, some of which are Jane's and others, Lucy's.


<sup>1</sup>Anal.—149.

<sup>2</sup>A. & P. Gr.—842.

**483.** When a name is *complex*, consisting of more terms than one, the *sign* of the possessive is annexed to the *last* only ; as, "Julius Cæsar's Commentaries."—"The Bishop of London's Charge."

**484.** The *noun* limited by the possessive is frequently *understood* ; as, "He stays at his father's" (house).

**485.** The preposition *of*, with the objective, is frequently *equivalent to the possessive*, but not always ; as, *A picture of my father* means a portrait of him. *My father's picture* may mean a picture belonging to him.

 For several particulars belonging to this Rule, see A. & P. Gr. **840-856.**

### EXERCISES.

[1. In the following Exercises, point out the noun or pronoun which limits, and the noun whose signification is limited by it ; and if the latter is understood, supply it. Put the **limiting word** in the **possessive** case. When several words coming together should be in the possessive, or when the name is complex, add the sign of the possessive (*'s*) to the proper term. **Write out** the exercises when corrected.)

The boys book.—The girls bonnet.—The Ladys book, a birds nest, a bear skin.—A mothers tenderness, and a fathers care, are natures gifts for mans advantage.—A horse tooth.—James and Thomas feet are cold.—Williams and Marys reign.—Sheldon's & Company's bookstore is in New York.—James loss is Thomas gain.—The Farmers Guide.—The Scholars Companion.—The Court's session is put off.—The meeting's President was appointed.

[2. **Write short sentences**, each of which shall contain two nouns, one limiting the other. Put the limiting word in the proper case.]

### LESSON 65.—Subjunctive Mood.

**486. RULE XIV.**—*The subjunctive mood is used in dependent clauses, when both contingency or doubt, and futurity are expressed ; as, "If he continue to study, he will improve."*<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> A. & P. Gr.—857-864.

<sup>1</sup> Anal.—222-224.

**487.** When contingency or doubt only, and *not* futurity, is implied, the *indicative* or *potential* is used ; as, "If he has money, he keeps it."

**488.** EXPLANATION.—Doubt and futurity are both implied when the auxiliary *shall* or *should*, referring to future time, can be inserted before the verb without changing the meaning ; thus, "Though he fall," and "Though he should fall," mean the same thing. It is only in the present tense and third person singular, that there is danger of error under this Rule, except in the verb *to be*.

**489.** REMARK.—Many of the best writers, and some distinguished grammarians, often use the subjunctive present, when mere doubt or contingency is expressed, and not futurity. A contrary practice of using the indicative where both doubt and futurity are implied, now begins to prevail ; thus, "If he *continues* to study, he will improve." But the weight of good authority still is evidently in favor of the preceding Rules. A general adherence to them would have this advantage, that the mood used would be a certain guide to the sense intended.

**490.** SUB-RULE.—*Lest* and *that*, annexed to a command, require the *subjunctive* mood ; as, "Love not sleep, lest thou come to poverty."—"Take heed that thou *speak* not to Jacob, either good or bad."

**491.** The *subjunctive* mood, in the *past tense*, expresses a supposition with respect to something present, but implies a *denial* of the thing supposed ; as, "If I *were* a nightingale, I would sing ;" implying, "I am not."

### EXERCISES.

[In the following sentences, state whether the verb following "if" or "though" should be in the *subjunctive* or *indicative* mood, and why ; and make the necessary correction.]

If there be a rule, it should be observed.—Though he be rich, he is not happy.—If the mail arrives to-morrow, we shall have letters.—If he studies diligently when he goes



to school, he will improve.—If he is discreet when he goes abroad, he will gain friends.—If he have money, he must have earned it.

## LESSON 66.—Infinitive Mood.

**492.** RULE XV.—*The infinitive mood is governed by verbs, nouns, or adjectives;*<sup>1</sup> as, “I desire to learn.”—“A desire to learn.”—“Anxious to learn.”

### Special Rules.

**493.** RULE 1.—*One verb being the subject of another, is put in the infinitive;* as, “To study is profitable.”

**494.** RULE 2.—*A verb in the infinitive may be the object of another verb;*<sup>2</sup> as, “Boys love to play.”

**495.** RULE 3.—*The infinitive, as the subject or object of a verb, sometimes has a subject of its own in the objective case;* as, “For us to do so, would be improper.”—“I know him to be prudent.”

**496.** When the *subject* of the infinitive is *not the same* as that of the principal verb, it is always in the *objective* case. The subject is not repeated when it is the same as that of the principal verb; as, “I desire to play.”

**497.** RULE 4.—*The infinitive is used as a predicate nominative after any verb as a copula;* as, “You are to blame.”

**498.** RULE 5.—*To, the sign of the infinitive, is not used after the verbs bid, dare, need, make, see, hear, feel, and let, in the active voice, nor after let in the passive;* as, “I saw him do it;” not “to do it.”

**499.** RULE 6.—*The infinitive is used to express the purpose, end, or design of the preceding act;*<sup>3</sup> as, “Some who came to scoff, remained to pray.”

**500.** RULE 7.—*In comparisons, the infinitive mood is put after so—as, too, or than;* as, “Be so good as to read this.”—“Too old to learn.”—“Wiser than to undertake it.”

<sup>1</sup> Anal.—155. <sup>2</sup> A. & P. Gr.—802—871. 882. <sup>3</sup> Anal.—136, 182, 6

## EXERCISES.

[1. In the following sentences, tell which verb is in the **infinitive mood**, and upon what it depends. State whether it is the **subject** or **object** of the principal verb. Insert or omit **to**, the sign of the infinitive, and give a reason according to the Rule.]

Strive learn.—Cease do evil.—Learn do well.—He needs not to write.—I would make you to take care.—He dares not to do a wicked action; nor will he dare do it.—I heard him to say so.—He was heard say so.—Let James to do this.—Bid him to speak to me.—Did you see him to do that?—No; but I heard him to do it.—Did you hear the bell to ring?—Make him to go.—He was made go.

[2. **Write short sentences**, in each of which shall be one verb in the infinitive mood, as the subject of another verb—as the object—to express the end or design—with *to* properly omitted—with a subject of its own in the objective case,]

## LESSON 67.—Construction of Participles.

**501. RULE XVI.**—**Participles** have the construction of **nouns, adjectives, and verbs**.<sup>1</sup>

**502. REMARK.**—To participles used in these ways, the Rules of Syntax for nouns, adjectives, and verbs may generally be applied.<sup>2</sup>

*Special Rules.*

**503. RULE 1.**—When the *present or perfect participle* is used as a noun, a noun before it is put in the *possessive case*; as, "Much depends on the *pupil's* composing frequently."

**504. EXPLANATION.**—The present participle is used as a *verbal noun*, whenever it is the *subject* of a verb or the *object* of a transitive verb or preposition. Under this Rule, the verbal noun may be modified in all respects as the verb.

**505.** A pronoun before the verbal noun must be the possessive pronoun, and not the possessive case; as, "Much depends on *your* composing frequently," (not *yours*.)

<sup>1</sup> Anal.—156.

<sup>2</sup> A. & P. Gr.—891—907.

**506. RULE 2.**—*When the present participle used as a noun, has an article or adjective before it, the preposition of follows; as, "By the observing of these rules."—"A complete forsaking of the truth."*

**507. EXPLANATION.**—When used in this way, the participle is regarded as a *noun simply*, and has not the government or modifications of the verb.

**508.** The sense will often be the same, if both the article and the preposition be omitted; but the one should not be omitted without the omission of the other; thus, "By observing these rules." In some cases, however, these two modes express very different ideas, and therefore attention to the sense is necessary, as directed in the following rule.

**509. RULE 3.**—*When the verbal noun expresses something of which the noun following denotes the doer, it should have the article and the preposition; as, "It was told in the hearing of the witness."—But when it expresses something of which the noun following does not denote the doer, but the object, both should be omitted; as, "The court spent much time in hearing the witness."*

**510.** *Of*, when followed by *another preposition*, can never be used after the verbal noun; thus, "By attending to these rules," can not be changed into, "By the attending of to these rules."

**511. RULE 4.**—(1.) *The past participle, and not the past tense, should be used after the auxiliaries have and be; as, "I have written" (not wrote).—"The letter is written" (not wrote).*

(2.) So also, the *past participle* should not be used for the *past tense*; as, "He ran;" not "He run." "I saw;" not "I seen."

**512. EXPLANATION.**—This Rule can be violated only when the past tense and past participle differ in spelling.

**513.** The participle in *ing* is sometimes used in a passive sense after the verb *to be*, to express the continued suffering of an action; as, "The house *is building*;" not *is being built*.<sup>1</sup>

<sup>1</sup> A. & P. Gr.—906, and Appendix ix.

## EXERCISES.

[(RULE 1).—In the following Exercise, tell which is the **verbal noun**, and how you know it to be used as such. If a noun stands before it, put that noun in the proper case, and give the Rule.]

My brother being sick, is the cause of his absence.—A man making a fortune, depends partly on him pursuing a proper course.—John attempting too much, was the cause of his failure.—Hers going away was not observed.

[(RULE 2).—In the following Exercise, point out the **participial noun**, and tell how you know it to be so used. See what words are before and after it, and if not right, according to the rule, make them so, and give the rule for the change.]

Learning of any thing well requires application.—The doing our duty is commendable.—By reading of good books the mind is improved.—Of the making many books there is no end.—By exercising of our faculties they are improved.—The giving to every man his own is a sacred duty.

[(RULE 3).—Consider whether the noun following the present participle denotes the **doer**, or the **object** of the act expressed by it, and correct the sentence accordingly.]

At hearing the ear, they shall obey.—Because of provoking his sons and daughters, the Lord abhorred them.—The greatest pain is felt in the cutting of the skin.—By obtaining of knowledge, you will gain respect.

[(RULE 4).—1. In the following Exercise, when the **past tense** stands after the auxiliary *have*, or *be*, change it into the **past participle**, and give the rule for the change.]

He should have wrote.—Have you spoke to the master ?  
—I am almost froze.—She had just began to read.—  
James has broke his arm.—You should have drove more slowly.—He has drank too much, and should be took home.—He might have rode if he had chose.—The thief has stole the spoons; I seen him do it.—John has shook the desk.—The boys book is tore, and he has went to get another.

[2. Correct the following **errors**, and give a reason for the change.]

I seen him an hour ago.—I done what you told me.—James run a mile in ten minutes, and has not began to be tired.—The school begun yesterday.—He ought to have went, or at least to have wrote.—That is wrong, you had not ought to done it.

[3. **Write short sentences**, in each of which shall be one of the following verbs, in the present-perfect or past-perfect indicative active, viz., *begin, run, write, freeze, eat, drink*. Parse the sentences, and apply the Rule.

4. **Write short sentences**, with the following verbs in the **passive voice**; viz., *write, begin, shake, sink, speak, give*. Parse them, and apply the Rule.

5. In the preceding exercises under Rules 2, 3, and 4, change the **participle** for a **finite verb**, and the other words so to correspond that the same sense may be expressed.]

## LESSON 68.—The Order of Time.

**514. RULE XVII.**—*In the use of verbs, and words that in point of time relate to each other, the order of time must be observed*; as, “I have known him these many years”—not “I know him these many years.”

**515. EXPLANATION.**—This Rule is general, and here also the *is* is the best guide. The following principles may be noticed here :

1. That which is *always true*, is expressed in the **present tense**; as, Vice produces misery.

2. That which is past, but viewed as *continued in the present*, is expressed in the **present-perfect tense**; <sup>1</sup> as, I have been at school six months.

3. Verbs having the auxiliaries *shall, will, may, can*, can be associated in a sentence with other verbs in the **present** only; those with *might, could, would, should*,

<sup>1</sup> A. & P. Gr.—911.

with verbs in the *past*; as, I *go* now that I *may* be in time.—  
I *went* that I *might* be in time.<sup>1</sup>

4. The *present infinitive* expresses what is cotemporary with, or subsequent to, the time of the governing verb; the *perfect infinitive* expresses what is antecedent to that time.<sup>2</sup>

### EXERCISES.

[1. In the following sentences, point out the verb which is wrong in respect of **tense**. Put it in the proper tense, and tell why it is changed.]

It was said that fever always produced thirst; that heat always expanded metals; and that truth was immutable.—He is now absent a week.—I have been abroad last year.—If he would lend me that book, I will be obliged to him.—He can do it if he would.—I intended to have written; but I still hoped he would have come.—Rome is said to be built seven hundred years before the Christian era.—Nero is said to persecute the Christians.—He has been gone long before I knew it.

[2. Write short sentences, and express, in each, something which you *hoped*, *feared*, *desired*, *intended*, to do yesterday, before yesterday;—which you *hope*, *fear*, etc., to do to-day, to-morrow. Also what some one *did* yesterday,—before yesterday,—always does,—does now,—has just now done,—will do to-morrow,—before to-morrow night.]

## LESSON 69.—Construction of Adverbs.

**516. RULE XVIII.**—**Adverbs** modify **verbs**, **adjectives**, and other **adverbs**; <sup>3</sup> as, “John *speaks distinctly*; he is *remarkably diligent*, and reads *very correctly*.”

### Special Rules.

**517. RULE 1.**—**Adverbs** should **not** be used as **adjectives**, nor **adjectives** as **adverbs**; as, “The *preceding* (not the *above*) extract.” (420.)

**518. RULE 2.**—**Two negatives** are equivalent to an

*affirmative*, and should not be used unless affirmation is intended; as, "I can not drink *any* (not *no*) more;" or, "I can drink *no* more."

**519. RULE 3.**—Adverbs are for the most part placed *before* adjectives, *after* a verb in the simple form, and *after* the first auxiliary in the compound form; as, "He is *very* attentive, behaves *well*, and is *much* esteemed."<sup>1</sup>

**520. EXPLANATION.**—This is to be considered only as a *general Rule*, to which there are many exceptions. Indeed no rule for the position of the adverb can be given, which is not liable to exceptions. The best direction for the use of this Rule, is to place the adverb where the sense requires, having due regard to the harmony of the sentence. This Rule applies to adjuncts, or adverbial phrases, as well as to adverbs.

**521.** *Where* should not be used for *in which*, except when the reference is to place; as, "The situation *in which* (not *where*) I left him;" because "situation" does not here refer to place.

**522.** *So* is often used elliptically for an *adjective*, a *noun*, or a *whole sentence*; as, "They are *rich*; we are not *so*."—"He is a *good scholar*, and I told you *so*."

**523.** *Only*, *solely*, *chiefly*, *merely*, *too*, *also*, and perhaps a few others, are sometimes *joined to substantives*; as, "Not *only* the men, but the women *also* were present." A prepositional phrase used as an adverbial adjunct of a verb, may, as a *whole*, be limited by an adverb; as, "He went *NEARLY* over the hill."

**REMARK.**—In composition, great care must be exercised in the *position* of the adverbs *only*, *merely*, *solely*, *chiefly*, and a few others; as, "*Only* acknowledge their iniquity; acknowledge *only* their iniquity."

**524.** A negative is often made by the syllables *dis*, *in*, *im*, *un*, etc., prefixed to a word. When this is the case,

<sup>1</sup>A. & P Gr.—940.



another negative is sometimes used, to express a diminished kind of affirmation; as, "He was *not* unkind." The negative terms are such as *no, not, neither, nor, never*, etc.

[For a fuller account of the construction and use of adverbs, see A. & P. Gr. 923-941.]

### EXERCISES.

[Adverbs being undeclinable, mistakes are liable to be made chiefly in their **position**; or in using as adverbs, words that are not so; or in using adverbs where other words are required. Correct the errors in the following sentences, as the Rules require:]

(RULE 1).—1. Point out the **modifying words** in the following sentences. If not adverbs, make them so, and give the Rule.]

Come quick.—James does that very good.—That was done excellent.—Time moves rapid.—Apparent slow people accomplish much if sufficient steady.—You can read excellent well.—It is real cold.

[2. In the following, point out the **adverb** improperly used. Show why it is so; change it for the proper term, and give the Rule.]

Thine often infirmities.—Come the soonest day possible.—The soonest time will be late enough.—The then ministry opposed the measure.—The condition where I found him was truly bad.—He was here last year, since when I have not seen him.

[3. **Write short sentences**, each of which shall contain an **adverb** (293-302), modifying a verb or adjective, and see that it is placed as directed in 519, 520.

(RULE 2).—1. Point out the **two negatives** in the following sentences. Show why they are wrong; correct them, and give the Rule.]

I can not eat no more.—He is not able to walk no further.—We can not do that in no way.—He will never be no taller.—Never do nothing of the kind.—Time and tide will not wait for no man.—No man never did that.—You must not drink no more.

[2. **Write short sentences**, each of which shall contain one of the following words: *worthy, just, discreet, kind, obliging, agreeable, happy, firm*, etc. Then prefix to these words the appropriate negative prefix mentioned above. Then insert a negative word in each sentence, and mark the difference of meaning with each change; thus, "He is a worthy man," "He is an unworthy man," "He is not an unworthy man."



(RULE 3.)—1. In the following sentences, **place the adverb** as the Rule directs, provided the sense will thereby be clearly expressed.]

A man industrious eminently.—He is agreeable always.—He sweetly sings, charmingly converses, and prudently conducts himself on all occasions.—He unaffectedly spoke. He manfully has contended for the prize, and certainly will obtain it.—Time will wait never.—He could have not done it.—He will be always trusty.—That disaster might have easily been prevented.—That piece was executed beautifully.

[2. The following sentences have the adverb placed according to the Rule, but the **sense and harmony** of the sentence evidently require it to be in a different position. Make the change.]

Men contend frequently for trifles.—I only saw three persons.—Of the books I sent him, he only read one.—James can read very well.—You should slowly write.—He might plainly have told him.—He not only saw her pleased, but greatly pleased.

[3. **Write** a number of short sentences, each of which shall contain one or more adverbs correctly placed. (See List, 294.)

4. **Write short sentences**, each of which shall contain one of the following adverbs, viz., *only, merely, solely, chiefly, first, at least*, and tell the word which they modify. Place the adverbs in as many different positions, in each sentence, as you can, so as to make sense, and mark the change of meaning.]

## LESSON 70.—Conjunctions.

**525. RULE XIX.—Conjunctions connect words, phrases, or sentences;** as, “He *and* I must go; but you may stay.”<sup>1</sup> (315, note.)

### *Special Rules.*

**526. RULE 1.—Conjunctions connect the same moods and tenses of verbs, and the same cases of nouns and pronouns;** as, “Do good, and seek peace.”—“Honor thy father and mother.”—“He and I saw it.”

<sup>1</sup> A. & P. Gr.—945.

**527.** EXPLANATION.—The reason of this rule is, that words thus connected are generally *in the same construction*: that is, nouns and pronouns connected must be in the same case, because they are subjects of the same verb, or objects of the same verb, or preposition; and verbs thus connected have usually the same subject. In respect of case, errors occur chiefly in the use of pronouns.

**528.** When conjunctions connect *different* moods and tenses, or when a *contrast* is stated with *but*, *not*, *though*, etc., the subject *is* generally *repeated*; as, "He may return, but *he* will not remain."

**529.** The *relative after than*, is usually in the *objective* case; as, "Alfred, than whom," etc.

**530.** After verbs of *doubting*, *fearing*, *denying*, the conjunction *that* should be used, and not *lest*, *but*, *but that*; as, "They feared *that* (not *lest*) he would die."

**531.** Conjunctions are sometimes *understood* between words or sentences connected;<sup>1</sup> as, "John, Charles, James, and Edward were in the boat."

**532.** In the *compound tenses*, verbs connected in the same tense, have the *auxiliary expressed* with the first, and *understood* to the rest; as, "John can read, write, and spell." When different tenses are connected, the *auxiliary* must always be expressed; as, "He *has* come, but he *will* not stay."

**533.** RULE 2.—*Certain words in the antecedent member of a sentence, require corresponding connectives in the subsequent one*: thus,

1. In clauses or words simply connected—

*Both* requires *and*; as, "*Both* he and I came."

*Either* ——— *or*; as, "*Either* he or I will come."

*Neither* ——— *nor*; as, "*Neither* he nor I came."

*Whether* ——— *or*; as, "*Whether* he or I came."

**Though** requires *yet*; as, "*Though* he slay me, *yet* will I trust in him."

**Not only** — **but also**: as, "*Not only* he, *but also* his brother goes."

**534.** In clauses connected so as to imply *comparison*:—

The *comparative degree* requires *than*; as, "He is *taller than* I am."

**Other** requires *than*; as, "It is no *other than* he."

**Else** — *than*; as, "What *else* do you expect *than* this."

**As** — *as* (expressing *equality*); as, "He is *as* tall *as* I am."

**As** — *so* (expressing *comparison*); as, "*As* thy day is, *so* shall thy strength be."

**So** — *as* (with a negative, expressing *inequality*); as, "He is not *so* learned *as* his brother."

**So** — *that* (expressing *consequence*); as, "He is *so* weak, *that* he cannot walk."

**Such** — *as* (expressing *similarity*); as, "He, or *such as* he."

**Such** — *that* (with a finite verb to express a *consequence*); as, "The difference is *such that* all will perceive it."

**535.** NOTE.—*As* and *so*, in the members of a comparison, are properly adverbs.

**536.** EXPLANATION.—This Rule means, that, when any of the corresponding terms above stands in *one member* of a sentence, the other term should stand in the *other member*. After "*though*," "*yet*" is sometimes understood.

**537.** RULE 3.—When a *subsequent clause*, or part of a sentence, is *common* to two different but connected antecedent clauses, it must be equally *applicable to both*; as, "That work always has been, and always will be, *admired*."

**538. EXPLANATION.**—In order to see whether sentences are correct according to this Rule, join the *member* of the sentence *common* to the two clauses, to *each of them separately*, so as to make two sentences. If both of the sentences are grammatically correct, and express the sense intended, the sentence is right—if not, it is wrong, and must be corrected. Thus, for example, “He has not, and he can not, be censured,” is wrong, because if you add the member “*be censured*,” to the first clause, it will make “He has not *be censured*,” which is incorrect, according to Sub-Rule 4 under Rule XVI. This must be corrected by inserting “been” after “has not,” so as to read, “He has not been, and he can not be, censured.” The different clauses should be correctly marked by punctuation.

**539.** This rule is often violated in sentences in which there are two comparisons of a different nature and government. Thus, “He was more beloved, but not so much admired as Charles.” Here, “*as Charles*,” is applicable to the clause “*so much admired*,” but can not be connected with “*more beloved*.” In such sentences as this, the proper way is, to complete the construction of the first member, and leave that of the second understood; as, “He was more beloved than Charles, but not so much admired” (*as Charles*).

### EXERCISES.

[**(RULE 1.)**—1. In the following, point out the connected verbs. If they have the **same subject**, put them in the **same mood** and **tense**. If they must be in different moods or tenses, **repeat** the subject; and if that is a noun, repeat it by its pronoun. Point out the connected nouns or pronouns, and put them in the same case.]

He reads and wrote well.—If he say it, and does it, I am content.—If he be at home, and is well, give him the letter.—My father has read the book, and will return it tomorrow.—James and me ran all the way.—That is a small matter between you and I.—Him and I are great friends, and so are Mary and me.—Nobody knows that better than her and me.

[2. **Write short sentences**, in which two or more verbs are connected in the **same mood and tense**, and notice particularly **531**. Put the verbs in the *present*—in the *past*—and in the *present-perfect*, etc. Express the same ideas, with the verbs in the **passive voice**.

3. **Write sentences** containing two or more verbs in **different** moods and tenses, paying attention to **528**; write others, containing two or more nouns or pronouns connected in the same case.

(RULE 2).—1. Point out the corresponding terms in the following sentences, make the second correspondent to the first, or the first to the second, as the sense requires. Supply the correspondent term where improperly omitted.]

He will not do it himself, nor let another do it for him.—  
Though he slay me, so will I trust in him.—This is so far  
as I am able to go.—This book is equally good as that  
one.—Nothing is so bad as it can not be worse.—He was  
not only diligent, but successful in his studies.—It is neither  
cold or hot.

[2. **Write correct sentences**, each of which shall contain **one pair** of the corresponding terms above, and state what they express.

3. In the following sentences, point out the **comparative degree**, or other correspondent terms, and make the one correspond to the other, according to the Rule.]

James writes better as I do.—There was more besides  
him engaged in that business.—No more but two can play  
at this game.—The days are longer in summer besides  
they are in winter.—Has James no other book but this?  
—This is such conduct that I did not expect.—It can be  
no other but he.—They had no other book except this  
one.—I would rather read as write.—He had no sooner  
done the mischief but he repented.

[2. **Write short sentences**, each of which shall contain a word in the comparative degree, or the word **other** or **such** followed by the proper correspondent term.

(RULE 3).—Make trial of the following sentences, as directed in the explanation. If either of the clauses, when joined with the member of the sentence common to both, makes a grammatical error, point it out and correct it.]

He always has, and he always will, be punctual.—They  
might, and probably were, good.—James is taller, but not

so strong as, his brother.—His book is not so good, though larger than I expected.—This house is larger, but not so convenient as that one.—I ever have, and I ever will say so.—“He depends and confides in me,” is as correct as, “He confides and depends upon me.”—I am older, but not so feeble as Thomas.—Warm weather is pleasant, but not so bracing as cold.—Iron is more useful, but not so valuable as gold or silver.

### LESSON 71.—Prepositions and Interjections.

**540. RULE XX.**—A **preposition** shows the relation between the **subsequent term** of its phrase and the **word which the phrase limits**; as, “The book *lies on* the table.”—“The *fear of* the Lord is the beginning of wisdom.”—“I am *confident of* success.”

**541. EXPLANATION.**—Whatever word is *limited* or described by the prepositional phrase as a whole, is the **antecedent** term of the relation. The principal substantive in the objective case is the subsequent term. The antecedent is most frequently a verb; as, “He *lives in* Boston.” Often a noun; as, “The *love of* wisdom.” Sometimes an adjective; as, “There was another *large of* understanding.” The prepositional phrase usually follows the antecedent; but it is sometimes placed before it; as, “This is he *of whom* I spoke.” “*Of making* many books there is no end.”

**542. RULE XXI.**—**Interjections** have no grammatical connection with the other words in a sentence.

**543.** After interjections, pronouns of the **first** person are commonly in the **objective case**; those of the **second**, in the **nominative**; as, “Ah me!”—“O thou!” In neither, however, does the case depend on the interjection. In the objective, there is an omission of the governing word; as, “Ah (pity) me!” In the nominative, they are in the **nominative independent**, denoting the person addressed.

## LESSON 72.—General Rule.

**544.** *In every sentence, the words employed, and ...e order in which they are arranged, should be such as clearly and properly to express the idea intended; and, at the same time, all the parts of the sentence should correspond, and a regular and dependent construction be preserved throughout.*

**545.** EXPLANATION.—This may be regarded as a *general Rule*, applicable to every case, and therefore comprehending all the preceding. Though these embrace almost everything belonging to the proper construction of sentences, yet there will sometimes occur instances of impropriety in the use, and arrangement, and connection of words, for the avoiding or correcting of which, no very specific rules can be given.

**546.** Among the *evils to be avoided* under this Rule, are the following,—

1. The use of words which *do not* correctly or properly *convey* the idea intended, or which *convey another* with equal propriety.
2. The *arrangement* of words or clauses in such a way that their relation to other words and clauses is doubtful, or difficult to be perceived.
3. The *separating* of *adjuncts* from their principals, by placing them so that they may be joined to words to which they do not belong.
4. The separating of *relative clauses* improperly from their antecedents.
5. Using injudiciously, or too frequently, the *third personal* or *possessive pronoun*, especially in indirect discourse.

## EXERCISES.

- [1. The following sentences are **not grammatically incorrect**,

but, from some of the causes just mentioned, are obscure, inelegant, ambiguous, or unintelligible. Point out the impropriety, correct it, and give a reason for the correction.]

(1) The Greeks, fearing to be surrounded on all sides, wheeled about, and halted with the river on their back.—  
 (2) Parmenio had served, with great fidelity, Philip, the father of Alexander, as well as himself, for whom he first opened the way into Asia.—(3) Lost, a new umbrella belonging to a gentleman with a curiously carved ivory head.—(4) Claudius was canonized among the gods, who scarcely deserved the name of man.—(5) A farmer went to a lawyer and told him that his bull had gored his ox.

[2. **Write** the sentences as corrected.]

### LESSON 73.—Ellipsis.

**547. RULE 1.**—*An Ellipsis, or omission of words, is admissible, when they can be supplied by the mind, with such certainty and readiness as not to obscure the sense.* Thus,

Instead of saying, "He was a learned man, and he was a wise man, and he was a good man;" we say, "He was a learned, wise, and good man."

**548. EXPLANATION.**—There is a constant tendency among men, to express their ideas in the *fewest words possible*. Whenever, therefore, a word can be spared from a sentence without obscuring its meaning, that word is often left out. This is called *ellipsis*. Thus, instead of the full form of the sentence, as follows: "I rise at six hours of the clock in the morning, I breakfast at seven hours of the clock in the morning, I go to school at nine hours of the clock, and study till twelve hours of the clock," we can say, (and be equally well understood), "I rise at six, breakfast at seven, go to school at nine, and study till twelve." This is the origin of abbreviated sentences; and in order to parse such, or to understand their grammatical construction, the words left out must be supplied.



## EXERCISES.

[1. In the following sentences, **leave out** such words as may be omitted without obscuring the sense.]

He had an affectionate father and an affectionate mother.  
—You may read, or you may write, as you please.—  
Will you study, or will you not study?—I have been at London, and I have seen the queen.—A house and a garden.—He would neither go, nor would he send.

[2. In the following sentences, **supply** the **words left out**, so as to show their full construction.]

It is six o'clock; we may study till seven.—We have done it, but you have not.—John will read, and Thomas write letters.—This apple is larger than that, but not so sweet.—Give this apple to James, that to Robert, and the other to Mary.—I have heard and read much about Washington and the Revolution.—“Sun, stand thou still upon Gibeon; and thou, Moon, in the valley of Ajalon.”

## LESSON 74.—Ellipsis not Allowable.

**549. RULE 2.**—*An ellipsis is not allowable, when it would obscure the sentence, weaken its force, or be attended with an impropriety;*<sup>1</sup> for example—

“We speak *that* we do know, and testify *that* we have seen,” should be, “We speak *that which* we do know, and testify *that which* we have seen.”

**550. EXPLANATION.**—The sense will always be obscured, when on account of improper ellipsis, the *construction* of the sentence is rendered *doubtful*, or is not clearly and readily perceived. When a sentence or clause is emphatic, ellipsis is less allowable. The antecedent to the relative, except in poetry, is seldom omitted; and the relative itself, if in the nominative case, never. The article should be repeated when a different form of it is required; as, “A horse and an ox.”

<sup>1</sup>A. & P. Gr.—1149.

## EXERCISES.

[In the following sentences, point out the **improper ellipsis**. Show why it is improper, and correct it.]

Cicero made orations, both on public and private occasions.—He is the most diligent scholar I ever knew.—Thou hast that is thine.—Thine the kingdom, the power, and the glory.—Depart in peace, be ye warmed, clothed, and filled.—I gladly shunned who gladly fled from me.—That is the best can be said of him.—He has a house and orchard.—We must all go the way we shall not return.

## LESSON 75.—Model of Syntactical Parsing.

**551.** In *syntactical* parsing, the pupil is required, besides parsing the word etymologically, (326, 1.) to state its *relation to other words* in the sentence, and the rules by which these relations are governed. To illustrate this more clearly, the sentence parsed etymologically (328) is here parsed syntactically.

“Give instruction to a wise man, and he will be yet wiser.”

*Give*..... is a verb, transitive, irregular; give, giving, gave, given; in the imperative, active, second person, singular, and agrees with its subject *thou*, understood. Rule VIII. “A verb agrees,” etc.

*Instruction*... is a noun, neuter, in the objective singular, object of *give*. Rule X. “A substantive being the object,” etc.

*To*..... is a preposition, and expresses the relation between the verb *give* and *man*, as the remote object of the verb.<sup>1</sup> Rule XX. “A preposition shows the relation,” etc.

*A*..... is an article, indefinite, belongs to *man*, and shows it to be used indefinitely. Rule III. “The article *a* or *an* is put,” etc.

---

<sup>1</sup> Anal.—83, 2.

*Wise* ..... is an adjective, compared, *wise, wiser, wisest*; and expresses a quality of *man*. Rule II. "An adjective or a participle," etc.

*Man* ..... is a noun, masculine, in the objective singular, the object of *to*. Rule XI. "A substantive being the object," etc.

*And* ..... is a conjunction, copulative, and connects the two clauses. Rule XIX. "Conjunctions connect," etc.

*He* ..... is a third personal pronoun, masculine, in the nominative, singular; stands instead of *man*, with which it agrees. Rule IV. "Pronouns agree," etc., and is the subject of *will be*. Rule VI. "The subject of a finite verb," etc.

*Will be* ..... is a verb, attributive, irregular; *am, being, was, been*; in the future, indicative; third person, singular; and affirms of its subject *he*, with which it agrees. Rule VIII. "A verb agrees," etc.

*et* ..... is an adverb, modifying *wiser*. Rule XVIII. "Adverbs modify," etc.

*Wiser* ..... is an adjective, comparative degree; *wise, wiser, wisest*; and qualifies *he* (representing *man*) of which it is predicated. Rule II. "An adjective or a participle," etc.

[Questions similar to those suggested at the close of LESSON 37, may be proper here also.]

For Exercises in Syntactical Parsing, the pupil may now turn to LESSON 18, or take any plain passage in the ordinary reading books used in the school, as the teacher may direct.]

\* \* Classes of suitable age and culture may take up the regular study of the manual of "*Analysis, Parsing, and Composition*," prepared to accompany this series.

## LESSON 76.—Promiscuous Exercises.

**552.** In order to correct the following Exercises, examine each sentence carefully, and see wherein it is wrong. See, first, whether words that should agree, do so—the *verb* with its *subject*—the *numeral* adjective with its *noun*—the *pronoun*, personal and relative, with its *substantive*; secondly, whether nouns and pronouns are in the *case* which the word on which they depend requires; and, lastly, whether the words are *arranged* in the order which the Rules require. Having found the error, correct it, and give the rule for the correction. These Exercises, when corrected, or in the time of correcting, *may be written out*, analyzed, and parsed.

1. John writes beautiful.—I shall never do so no more.  
—The train of our ideas are often interrupted.—Was you present at last meeting?—He need not be in so much haste.—He dare not act otherwise than he does.—Him who they seek is in the house.—George or I is the person.  
—They or he is much to be blamed.—The troop consist of fifty men.—Those set of books was a valuable present.  
—That pillar is sixty foot high.—His conduct evinced the most extreme vanity.—The trees are remarkable tall.

2. He acted bolder than was expected.—This is he who I gave the book to.—Eliza always appears amiably.—Who do you lodge with now?—He was born at London, but he died in Bath.—If he be sincere, I am satisfied.—Her father and her were at church.—The master requested him and I to read more distinctly.—It is no more but his due.—Flatterers flatter as long, and no longer than they have expectations of gain.—John told the same story as you told.—This is the largest tree which I have ever seen.

3. Let he and I read the next chapter.—She is free of pain.—Those sort of dealings are unjust.—David, the son of Jesse, was the youngest of his brothers.—You was very kind to him, he said.—Well, says I, what does thou think of him now?—James is one of those boys that was kept in

at school, for bad behavior.—Thou, James, will deny the deed.—Neither good nor evil come of themselves.—We need not to be afraid.—It is all fell down.

4. He expected to have gained more by the bargain.—You should drink plenty of goat milk.—It was him who spoke first.—Do you like ass milk?—Is it me that you mean?—Who did you buy your grammar from?—If one takes a wrong method at first setting out, it will lead them astray.—Neither man nor woman were present.—I am more taller than you.—She is the same lady who sang so sweetly.—After the most straitest sect of our religion, I lived a Pharisee.—Is not thy wickedness great? and thine iniquities infinite?—There is six that studies grammar.

### LESSON 77.—Punctuation.

**553.** *Punctuation* is the art of *dividing* a written composition into sentences, or parts of sentences, by points or stops.

**554.** The design of these points is to *show the meaning* more clearly, and also to serve as a *guide to the pauses* and reflections required in reading.

**555.** The *principal marks* used for these purposes are as follows :

The *comma* ( , ), the *semicolon* ( ; ), the *colon* ( : ), the *period* or full stop ( . ), the note of *interrogation* ( ? ), the note of *exclamation* ( ! ), the *parenthesis* ( ), and the *dash* ( — ).

**556.** No very definite rule can be given for the length, in reading, of the pauses indicated by these marks. As a general rule, however, the comma represents the shortest pause; the semicolon, a pause double that of the comma; a colon, a pause double that of the semicolon; and a period, a pause double that of the colon.

#### *Comma.*

**557.** The *comma* usually separates those parts of a sentence which, though very closely connected in *sense* and construction, require a pause between them.

1. In short simple sentences, the comma is not used ; as, "Hope is necessary in every condition of life."
2. When the logical subject of a verb is long, a comma is usually inserted before the verb ; as, "A steady and undivided attention to one subject, is a sure mark of a superior mind."
3. A comma is generally used between the members of a compound sentence ; as, "Crafty men condemn studies, simple men admire them, and wise men use them."
4. Two words of the same class connected by a conjunction have no comma between them ; as, "The earth and the moon are planets." "He is a wise and good man." When the conjunction is not expressed a comma is inserted ; as, "He is a plain, honest man."
5. More than two words of the same class connected by conjunctions expressed or understood, have a comma after each ; as, "Poetry, music, and painting, are fine arts." But when the words connected are adjectives, the last should have no comma ; as, "He was a brave, wise and prudent man."
6. Nouns in apposition are usually separated by a comma ; as, "Paul, the apostle of the Gentiles." But a noun in apposition, unlimited, is not so separated ; as, "Paul the apostle."
7. The nominative independent and the nominative absolute with the clauses depending upon them, have a comma after them ; as, "I am, Sir, your obedient servant." "The time of youth being precious, it should be improved."
8. A comma is generally placed after an adverb or adverbial phrase at the commencement of a sentence ; as, "First, Secondly, In general, Indeed,"
9. When a verb is understood, a comma must be inserted ; as, "Reading makes a full man ; conversation, a ready man ; and writing, an exact man."<sup>1</sup>

### *Semicolon.*

**558.** The *semicolon* is used to separate the parts of a

---

<sup>1</sup> A. & P. Gr.—989—1006.

sentence, which are *less closely connected* than those which are separated by a comma.

**559.** The parts of a sentence separated by a semicolon should contain in themselves a complete and independent proposition, but still having a connection with the other parts; as, "Straws swim upon the surface; but pearls lie at the bottom."<sup>1</sup>

### *Colon.*

**560.** The *colon* is used to divide a sentence into two or more parts, less closely connected than those which are separated by a semicolon; but not so independent as to require a period; as, "Study to acquire the habit of thinking: no study is more important." It is also used before a direct quotation.<sup>2</sup>

### *Period.*

**561.** The *period* is used when a sentence is *complete*, with respect to the construction and the sense intended; as, "God made all things." "Have charity towards all men."

**562.** A period must be used at the end of all books, chapters, sections, etc., also after all abbreviations; as, A.D., M.A., Art. II., Obs. 3., J. Smith, etc.

**563.** But no pause is used between the different portions of a person's name when not abbreviated. Thus, we must not write, John, A. Smith, or James. Brown: but John A. Smith: James Brown.

**564.** Such expressions, however, as, 1st, 2nd, 3's, 8vo, etc., being not strictly abbreviations, do not require a period after them.

### *Note of Interrogation.*

**565.** The note of *interrogation* is placed at the end of a sentence in which a question is asked; as, "What have you done?"

*Note of Exclamation.*

**566.** The note of *exclamation* is used after expressions of *emotion* or *passion*, and after *solemn invocations*; as, "Hail! holy light!" "Offspring of heaven first-born!" "Oh, that he would come!"

*The Dash.*

**567.** The *dash* is used where a sentence is left unfinished: also to denote a significant pause—an unexpected turn in the sentiment—or that the first clause is common to all the rest; as in this definition.

*Other Characters used in Writing.*

**568.** *Parenthesis* ( ) includes a clause inserted in the body of a sentence, but which may be omitted without injuring the construction of the sentence; as, "Know ye not, brethren, (for I speak to them that know the law,) how that the law hath dominion over a man as long as he liveth?"

**569.** *Brackets* [ ] are used to enclose a word or phrase explaining, correcting, or supplying a deficiency in a sentence; as, "James told John that he [John] was to study."

**570.** The *Apostrophe* ( ' ) is used when a letter or letters are omitted; as, *e'er* for *ever*, *tho'* for *though*, or to mark the possessive case.


**571.** *Quotation* marks ( " " ) enclose words and passages quoted from another.

**572.** The *Hyphen* ( - ) is used to connect compound words; as, *lap-dog*, *horse-jockey*: but in permanent compounds, the hyphen is not used. Also at the end of a line to show that one or more syllables of the last word are carried to the next line.

**573.** *Section* ( § ) is used to divide a discourse or chapter into portions.


**574.** *Paragraph* ( ¶ ) denotes the beginning of a new subject.



**575.** The *Brace* (  ) is used to connect words which have one common term, or three lines in poetry having the same rhyme, called a *triplet*.

**576.** *Ellipsis* ( — ) or ( \*\*\* ) is used when some letters are omitted; as, K—g or K\*\*g for King.

**577.** The *Caret* ( ^ ) is used to show that some word is either omitted or interlined.

**578.** The *Index* (  ) is used to point out anything that requires special attention.

**579.** The *vowel marks* are: the *Diæresis* ( ¨ ) on the last of two concurrent vowels showing that they are not to be pronounced as a diphthong: the *Acute* accent ( ' ): the *Grave* ( ` ): the long sound ( ¯ ): the short sound ( ˇ ).

**580.** The *marks of reference* are: the *Asterisk* ( \* ); the *Dagger* ( † ); the *Double Dagger* ( ‡ ); the *Parallel* ( || ), sometimes also the §, ¶, also small letters or figures referring to notes at the foot of the page.

## LESSON 78.—Capitals.

**581.** The letters commonly used in printing are distinguished and represented as follows:

- (1.) CAPITAL LETTERS.
- (2.) SMALL CAPITALS.
- (3.) *Italic Letters*.
- (4.) Lower case\* (small letters.)

**582.** In composition, the following words begin with *capital* letters:

1. The *first word* of every book, chapter, letter, note, or any other piece of writing; for examples, see the first word of this book, its chapters, etc.

2. The first word *after a period*; also after a note of interrogation, or exclamation, when the sentence before, and the one after it, are independent of each other;<sup>1</sup> as, "Love is

\* So called by printers.

<sup>1</sup> A. & P. Gr.—77, 2.

stronger than death." "What did he to thee? How opened he thine eyes?" "Gone to be married! Gone to swear a peace! Gone to be friends!"

3. *Proper names*, that is, names of persons, places, ships, etc.;<sup>1</sup> as, George Washington, General Grant, Judge Story, Sir Walter Scott, America. The Ohio. Sheldon & Co., Broadway, New York.

4. The pronoun *I*, and the interjection *O*, are written in capitals; as, O my Country! how I love thee!

5. The *first word of every line in poetry*; as,

Life is real, life is earnest,  
And the grave is not the goal:  
"Dust thou art, to dust returnest"  
Was not spoken of the soul.

6. The *appellations* of the *Deity*; as, God, Most High the Almighty, the Supreme Being, etc.

7. Adjectives derived from the *proper names* of places as, Grecian, Roman, English, etc.

8. The *first word of a direct quotation*, when the quotation<sup>2</sup> would form a complete sentence by itself; as, Always remember the maxim, "Know thyself;" Solomon says, "Pride goeth before destruction." But when the quotation is indirect, so as not to form a complete sentence by itself, the first word does not begin with a capital; as, Solomon says that pride goeth before destruction.

9. Common nouns, when *personified*; <sup>3</sup> as, "Come, gentle Spring."

10. Every *substantive* and principal word in the *titles* of books; as, "Euclid's Elements of Geometry;" "Goldsmith's Deserted Village."

11. Historical eras, remarkable events, extraordinary physical phenomena, and generally, all words which are used in a specialized sense; as, *The Iron Age*, *Magna Charta*, *The Declaration of Independence*, *The Polar Sea*, *Aurora Borealis*, etc.

**NOTE.**—Other words besides the preceding may begin with capitals, when they are remarkably **emphatic**, or the principal **subject** of the composition.<sup>1</sup>

### EXERCISES.

[In the following Exercises, correct the mistakes, and give a reason for the correction; also, **punctuate** properly.]

in the beginning god created the heavens and the earth

dear sir your note is received sorry am i to be told of your sickness—i hope you may speedily recover—the boston courier makes fun of a learned disquisition in the philadelphia press—george washington was the greatest general of his age—yonder comes the powerful king of day

haste thee nymph and bring with thee  
mirth and youthful jollity

hail holy light offspring of heaven—holy holy holy lord  
god of sabaoth—macauleys history of england—prescotts conquest of mexico—dickens household words—the evangelical monthly—the edinburgh review—remember the saying that is written death is swallowed up in victory—the grocian sages were more learned than the roman—the erie canal passes through the state of new york—be it enacted by the senate and house of representatives etc—o my country how i weep for thee—unto thee do i lift up mine eyes o thou that dwellest in the heavens—lessons at home in spelling and reading—part 1 price 8 cents—the resources of california comprising agriculture mining etc.

### LESSON 79.—Composition.

**583.** *Composition* is the putting of words together in sentences, for the purpose of expressing our ideas in *writing*, in the best manner, according to the *Rules of Grammar*, and the *best usages* of the language.

**584.** Almost all the Exercises in the preceding Grammar, and especially those under the Rules of Syntax, have been

<sup>1</sup> A. & P. Gr.—77.

framed with a view to exercise the pupil in the elementary parts of composition :

1. By leading him to *vary his ideas*, and to express the same idea in different forms.
2. By enabling him to detect and *correct errors* which often occur in the construction of sentences ; and so to put him on his guard against similar errors.
3. By the exercise of forming *correct sentences* for himself, according to the particular directions laid down under the various Rules.

**585.** In committing his own ideas to writing, in the form of compositions, then, all he has to do, is to endeavor to select the *proper words*, and to *combine* and *arrange* these so as to express his meaning correctly, according to the Rules with which he is now supposed to be familiar. The few following hints may be useful :

#### *General Directions to Young Composers.*

**586.** *Spell* every word *correctly*.\* Pay proper attention to the use of *capitals* ; always using them where they should be, and never where they should not be. (See 582.)

**587.** Carefully *avoid all vulgar expressions* and *capt* phrases, and never use words which you do not understand, or which do not correctly express your meaning.

**588.** At the end of the line, *never divide a word of one syllable*, nor any word in the middle of a syllable. If there should not be room at the end of the line for the whole syllable, do not begin it at all, but carry it to the next line.

**589.** When you have written what you intended, *look over it carefully* ; see if you can improve it by a *better choice* of words, or by a *better arrangement* of them, so as to express your meaning more clearly (544) ; and mark the changes proposed.

---

\* For the principal rules for spelling derivatives, consult the dictionary, or A. & P. Gr.—51—76.

**590.** Copy the whole over in as neat, distinct, and plain a manner as you can, guarding against blots and erasures, which disfigure any writing, dotting your *i*'s, crossing your *t*'s, and *pointing* the whole as well as you are able (553), so that any person, as well as yourself, may easily read and understand it.

**591.** Try to make every new composition *better than the one before it*. Never write carelessly, and though it may be somewhat difficult at first, a little practice will soon make it easy.

\* \* For additional suggestions and directions, see "ANALYSIS, PARSING AND COMPOSITION," p. 181, and the "ANALYTICAL AND PRACTICAL GRAMMAR," of this series.

## LESSON 80.—Construction of Sentences.

**592.** Although no excellence in composition is attainable without *adequate notions* of the subject of which we write, and *intelligent thought* in determining and adjusting the relations of ideas and in selecting the proper words to express them; yet practice in the *mechanical construction* of simple sentences may render important aid, and give facility, ease, and elegance to our style.

**593.** Let the following and similar Exercises be used judiciously *in connection with* the study of the regular lessons in the grammar. The teacher may extend these Exercises, and should in all cases seek to furnish new and fresh material.

**594.** A single proposition requires for its enunciation at least *two words*, sometimes three; as,

John . . . . comes.

Paper . . . . is white.

**595.** The *subject* in its simplest form, may be expressed:  
 1. By a *noun*; as, "Gold is heavy;" 2. By a *pronoun*; as, "She is wise;" 3. By an *infinitive*; as, To play is pleasant;  
 4. By a *participle*; as, Walking is a beneficial exercise.

**596.** The *predicate* in its simplest form consists of the *copula and an attribute*; as, *God is good*: or it may consist of only a *verb*, containing in itself both copula and attribute; as, *John walks* (=is walking). (346—348.)

**597.** The *attribute* may be, 1. A *noun*; as, *Music is an art*; 2. An *adjective*; as, *Solomon was wise*; 3. A *participle*; as, *The boy was injured*; 4. An *infinitive*; as, *I am to go*; 5. A *prepositional clause*; as, *The affair is of consequence*.

### EXERCISES.

[Compose simple sentences, employing the following words as **subjects**:]

*Example.*—The *bread* is wholesome.

Bread—fruit—school—books—pens—pencils—pupils—children—exercise—water—plants—to study—we—carpet—work—to play—copper—gold—the dog—the horse—the elephant, etc.

[Write simple sentences, using the following words as **attributes** in the predicate.]

*Example.*—The sky is *blue*.

Tall—short—narrow—wide—white—green—bright—nice—sweet—strong—idle—diligent.

[Put the following verbs in the predicate, and write out the sentences.]

Spoke—screamed—wrote—ran—saw—will come—may be allowed—must study.

[\*\* These lists may be enlarged at the discretion of the teacher.]

In the sentences written as above, point out the **subject** and **predicate**; name the principal word in each.

### Extension of Subject and Predicate.

**598.** Both the **subject** and **predicate** may be *enlarged* or expanded in various ways by words limiting or explaining the principal elements. (368, 381.)

**599.** When such limiting words are necessary to express any complete sense, they are called **complements**; as, *John wrote a letter*.—He became *sick*.

**600.** When they are added at the pleasure of the speaker, and may be omitted and still leave a complete proposition, they are called *adjuncts* : as, *The old black horse ran rapidly along the road.*

**601.** Complements and adjuncts are not necessary to the *sense of all* propositions. We may sometimes express ourselves intelligibly without them. There are, however, many instances in which their omission would leave the sense very indefinite or obscure ; as, "An avaricious man is a miserable being." Take away "An avaricious" and "miserable," and the remainder, "*Man is a being,*" will convey but an indefinite signification. Similarly, "The love of money is the root of all evil," becomes, when deprived of its complements, "*Love is root.*"

### EXERCISES.

[Write sentences, employing the following expressions as **complements**, or as **adjuncts**.]

*Examples.*—The little bird is singing.

The practice of virtue brings its reward.

Little—of virtue—in the school—at home—this young—the kind—his father—an honest.

[\*.\* Extend these examples at pleasure.]

### Complements for Predicates.

**602.** *Predicates* of sentences may, it is evident, *be extended*, at the will of the speaker, in an almost endless variety of ways. Thus, take the proposition "He gave." We may ask, What did he give? He gave bread—to whom?—to the poor—when?—during the winter season—how?—kindly. With all these additions, we have the following: "He kindly gave bread to the poor during the winter season."

### EXERCISES.

[Write sentences, in which the **extension of the predicate** shall be supplied from the following:]

Many reasons—with a great army—in security—in great

haste—to his own residence—with many excuses—a month in the country—near the city—over the hill—since the day before yesterday, etc.

**603.** The pupil may now be required to compose sentences in which *both subject and predicate* are *extended* or enlarged by limiting words; as,

1. *A man of about forty years of age was then conducted into the room.*

2. *The tree in my garden is growing more beautiful every day.*

3. *The bright colors of the rainbow extended across the whole sky.*

Hermit lived—we marched—a man dropped—the horses were left—the men drank—people pretend—they arrived—inhabitants flocked—birds began—pillar stands—London is supplied.

### *The Introductory Clause.*

**604.** In order to add grace and harmony to composition, the *adjunct*, when it expresses *time, place, or manner*, is often placed *at the beginning* of a sentence, and followed by a comma. Such introductory clause should generally be short. The following are examples:

*In the beginning*, God created the heavens and the earth.

*During that long struggle*, he was true to his country.

*In the midst of the confusion*, he escaped.

### *EXERCISES.*

[Compose sentences with the following **introductory clauses**.]

In the mean time—Early the next morning—notwithstanding these difficulties—In every part of our land—in ancient times—ever since the beginning of spring—soon after these events—not knowing what to do—by dint of inquiry, etc.

**605.** Sometimes the subject is preceded by *two or more* introductory phrases or clauses, as follows:

*With these words, and with a look of disdain*, she passed on.



[Compose sentences, using the following:]

On the following day, my arrangements being all completed.—Last year, about the middle of August.—In the valley of the Nile, not far from Cairo, etc.

**606. REMARK.**—Sometimes a limiting clause or *circumstance* is placed immediately after the subject; as, Man, *at his best estate*, is vanity.

**607. CAUTION.**—Generally a circumstance or limiting phrase should not be inserted between the principal clauses of a sentence, as it will be sometimes doubtful to which it belongs; as, “Having finished the manuscript, *upon the death of his father*, he procured its publication.”

### *Amplification.*

**608.** As an additional exercise to give practical application to the preceding, the pupil may take the simplest form of sentence and add to it all the qualifying words and circumstances which can, without any violation of probability, be annexed to it; as,

1. The brothers walked.
2. The brothers walked towards the river.
3. The brothers walked together towards the river.
4. The brothers walked together in silence towards the river.
5. In the evening, the brothers walked together towards the river.
6. In the cool of the evening, the two brothers walked together in silence towards the river.
7. In the cool of the evening, the two brothers, arm in arm, walked together in silence towards the river which flows along the bottom of their garden, etc.

[**Amplify** the following, as shown above.]

He took leave of his friend.—The traveller was received.—The brother came.—They sailed.—The men saw.—I desire.—He told us a story.—They had reached home.—The people were glad, etc.

NOTE.—The learner may sometimes be assisted in this Exercise by asking the questions *how? when? where? by whom?* etc., with the simple proposition.

## LESSON 81.—Exercises in Composition.

**609.** The more simple exercises in composition are, for young beginners, so much the better. They should not be required to write about anything with which they are not perfectly familiar.

1. The following is a very simple and easy exercise. A class of pupils may be directed to look at a certain *picture* in the Reading or Spelling Book or Geography, or any other book at hand; and the *teacher* may excite their attention by *asking some questions*, or telling them something respecting it, and then direct each one, either in his seat or at home, to *write a description* of the picture, together with any ideas that occur to him on the subject. This method will furnish an endless variety of easy and useful exercises.

2. The teacher may read or relate some simple *narrative*, or give a familiar description of some object; and pupils may be required to *reproduce* the same, from memory, in their own language. The lessons in geography, history, and other subjects of the daily school exercises, may similarly be *reproduced* in writing.

3. From pictures, the attention may be turned to *real objects*. The class may now be directed to any object or objects within their view, which they may be required to describe and give their ideas about, as before; for example, the school-house and its furniture--the business of the day, in the form of a journal--the principal objects in view to the south of the school-house--to the north--to the east--to the west. Each may be directed to describe his own house, and the leading objects in view from it in different directions, or any object which he may choose to select.

4. Another class of easy and interesting subjects may be

found in describing familiar objects in *natural history*—the various seasons of the year, with their employments and amusements—the various operations of the farmer, and different mechanic arts—narratives of any accidents, or striking events that may have occurred.

5. Short familiar *epistolary correspondence*, real or imaginary. One pupil may be directed to write to another concerning anything he pleases. A post-office might be set up in the school, with its letter-box, to be opened at stated seasons, and its contents read for the amusement and instruction of the school. This exercise, because voluntary, would be entered into with spirit, and prove of great benefit.

6. For the purpose of giving readiness and celerity in composition, and compelling *abstraction* of the mind from every other interest save that in hand, there is no exercise of greater value than that of *impromptu composition*.

**Method.** Let the pupils of a class be seated in order, with slate and pencil, or other writing materials in hand. When all are in readiness, the teacher announces a simple theme adapted to the capacity of the class, and at a signal all begin to write. At the expiration of three, five, or ten minutes, upon the giving of another signal, all cease. No emendations are now to be made.

The teacher may now call upon one and another of the pupils to read what they have written, and when a little confidence has been created by experience, the pupils, and afterwards the teacher, may, in a kindly spirit, criticise the several performances, and make such suggestions as seem pertinent.

After a time, these impromptu exercises may be made a drill preliminary to a more elaborate essay on the same subject, to be written out by each pupil.

The time allotted, and the particular methods employed, may be varied as each teacher's genius and experience, and the wants of the class, may dictate.

7. *Themes on familiar subjects* may next be assigned, such as the following:

Point out the evils of the following vices and improprieties, and make such remarks respecting them as you think proper; viz., Lying, Stealing, Swearing, Disobedience to Parents, Sabbath-breaking, Discontentment, Intemperance, Ill-nature, Violent passions, Penuriousness, Idleness, Cruelty to animals, Bad company, etc.

Point out the benefits arising from Truth, Honesty, Sobriety, Love to God, Love to men, Good nature, Industry, Contentment, Kindness to the poor, Keeping good company. Proper amusements, etc., and make such remarks as you think proper respecting them.

In all cases with beginners, it is better to require them to give their own thoughts on familiar subjects with which they are acquainted, than to give them subjects of an abstract nature, or of which they cannot be supposed to have much knowledge. In the former case, they will be likely to give their own thoughts in their own way; in the latter, they will have to resort to books, and instead of giving their own ideas, will be apt to copy the writings of others, without perhaps, well understanding them.

8. When the compositions are prepared, the *errors in Grammar* should be pointed out and explained; *mistakes in orthography, capitals, punctuation*, etc., corrected, or pointed out to be corrected, and then the whole copied, in a correct and plain manner, into a book kept for that purpose.

Compositions of a higher order than those which have been suggested, would be above the years and acquirements of those for whom this little work is intended, and would therefore be improper.

Having gone through these Lessons, pupils, though young, will be well prepared for taking up, with ease and advantage, the "Analytical and Practical Grammar of the English Language," and the manual of "Analysis, Parsing, and Composition," and for going through a more thorough and critical course.

## PART FOURTH.—PROSODY.

## LESSON 82.—Prosody.

**610.** Prosody consists of two parts; *Elocution* and *Versification*.

*I. Elocution.*

**611.** *Elocution* is correct **pronunciation**, and the proper **management of the voice** in reading or speaking.

**612.** In order to read or speak with grace and effect, attention must be paid to correct *enunciation*, the proper *pitch* of the voice, the *accent* and *quantity* of syllables, and to *emphasis*, *pause*, and *tone*.

**613.** *Accent* is a stress of the voice placed upon a particular syllable in pronouncing a word of two or more syllables. Thus, in the word "*harmony*," the stress is on the first syllable. In "*undertake*," it is on the last.

**614.** When expressed at all, this stress of voice is indicated by the mark ( ' ) placed on the accented syllable.

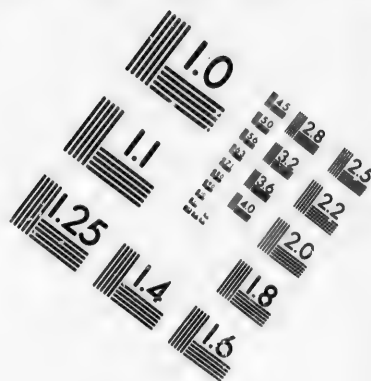
**615.** Words of more than two syllables generally have a *primary* and a *secondary* accent; as, *commûnicâtion*, *dôminéer*.

**616.** To know the place of the primary accent is indispensable to correct pronunciation. A good dictionary is the best guide to the proper accent of a word.

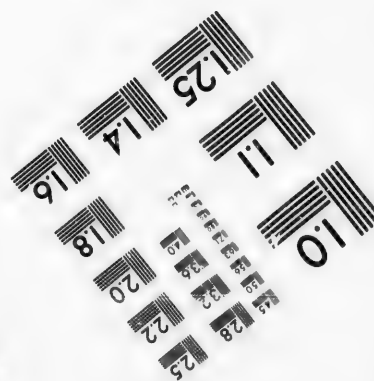
**617.** Words from English roots commonly keep the accent throughout on the root; as, *lôve*, *lôveliness*, *lôvelily*, *belôved*, *lôvesick*. This is not so, however, with words from foreign roots; as, *hârmony*, *harmônious*.

**618.** In dissyllables which are at once nouns or adjectives, and verbs; the noun or adjective generally has the accent on the first and the verb on the last syllable; as,





6'



# Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503**

1.5 2.8 2.5  
3.2 2.2  
4.0 2.0  
1.8

10  
01



*Noun or adjective.*

côtract

présent

présage

pérfume

ábsent

*Verb.*

contráct

présént

preságe

perfúme

absént

**619.** In *dissyllables* formed by affixing a termination, the *first* syllable is commonly accented; as, chîldish, kîngdom, tóilsome.

**620.** Dissyllables formed by *prefixing* a syllable to the radical word generally have the accent on the *last* syllable; as, to retáin, to beséem, to bestów.

*II. Versification.*

**621. Versification** is the arrangement of a certain number of **long and short syllables** according to certain rules. Composition so arranged is called *Verse or Poetry*.

**622. Verse** is of two kinds: *Rhyme* and *Blank verse*. *Rhyme* is a similarity of sound in the last syllables of two or more lines arranged in a certain order. Poetry consisting of such lines, is sometimes called *Rhyme*. *Blank-Verse* is poetry without rhyme.

**623.** Every verse or line of poetry consists of a certain number of parts called *Feet*. The arrangement of these feet in a line according to the accent, is called *Metre*; and the dividing of a line into its component feet is called *Scanning*.

**624.** All *feet* used in poetry, are reducible into *eight* kinds: four of two syllables, and four of three syllables; the long syllable being marked by a straight line (—) and the short, by a curve, (∪) as follows:

*Dissyllable.*

A Trochee — ∪

An Iambus ∪ —

A Spondee — —

A Pyrrhic ∪ ∪

*Trisyllable.*

A Dactyl — ∪ ∪

An Amphibrach ∪ — ∪

An Anapaest ∪ ∪ —

A Tribrach ∪ ∪ ∪

**625.** In English, accented syllables are long, unaccented are short.

**626.** The Metres in most common use, are the *Iambic*, *Trochaic*, and *Anapæstic*.

**627.** *Iambic Metre* is adapted to grave and serious subjects; it has the second, fourth and other even syllables, accented or long; and the first, third and other uneven syllables, unaccented or short. Of this verse there are various kinds, some having two feet, some three, some four, some five. The last is called heroic measure, and is the same that is used by Milton, Young, Thomson, Pollok, etc.

**628.** In iambic verse set to music, especially in sacred songs, stanzas with alternate lines of four and three feet are called common metre; when all the lines have four feet each, long metre. Stanzas having three feet in the first, second, and fourth lines, and four in the third, are called short metre.

**629.** When the last line of a stanza is extended to *six feet*, it is called *Alexandrine*.

**630.** *Trochaic Metre* is quick and lively, and adapted to gay and cheerful composition. It comprises verses of one and a half, two, three, four, five, and sometimes six feet; sometimes followed by an additional syllable.

**631.** *Anapæstic Metre* consists of lines of two, three, or four Metres or Anapæsts, with sometimes an additional syllable.

# APPENDIX.

---

## I. ELEMENTS OF THE SENTENCE.

By an *element* we mean *one of the simplest parts* or principles of any thing. It performs a distinct office or function. Thus,

An element of a *word* is a letter or a sound.

The elements of a *phrase* are the words of which it is composed.

The elements of a *sentence* are the separate words, phrases, or clauses which give specific character to the proposition.

NOTE.—Frequently *several words*, constituting a phrase or a clause, make, taken together, only *one sentential element*. Thus,

Several stars of *less magnitude* now appeared.

The boy *who studies* (= studious) will improve.

In every sentence there must be a *subject* (generally a noun or pronoun) and its *verb*. Other elements may be added to limit, modify, or enlarge the ideas which these contain. Hence,

The elements of a sentence are of *two kinds*, *principal* and *subordinate*.

1. *Principal Elements* are those necessary to the structure of *any* sentence. (Grammatical subject and grammatical predicate, 361, 373.)

2. *Subordinate Elements* are those which modify or limit the principal elements. A subordinate element may limit another subordinate element.

These are of three kinds—

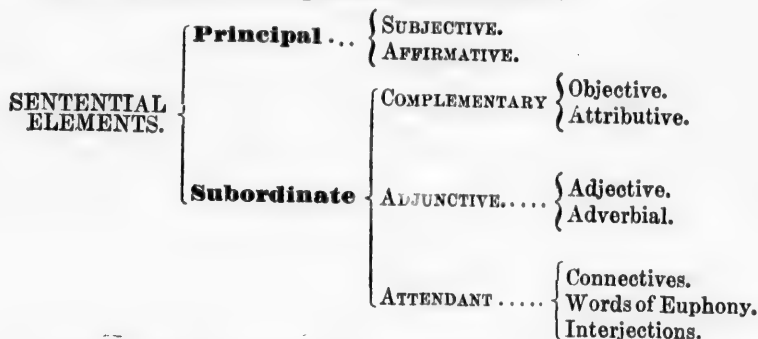
(1.) *Complementary*, such as complete the affirmation

made by a transitive verb—the *object*; as, He studies *grammar*; or that made by an attributive verb—the *attribute*; as, Sugar is *sweet*.—He became *wise*.

(2.) *Adjective*, used directly to limit or define other elements. These are *adjective* and *adverbial*; as, A *good* boy studies *his* lesson.—A *very* good boy studies *attentively*.

(3.) *Attendants*, including—(a) Connectives, conjunctions, and prepositions; and (b) Words of euphony and exclamations.

This scheme may be presented as follows:



In the preliminary analysis of sentences, by the foregoing—

1. Tell the *subject* and the *predicate*.
2. Say, The *principal element* in the subject is—, limited by the adjunct, word, phrase, or clause, —, etc.
3. The *principal element* in the predicate (the affirmer) is —, (if transitive), limited by the object —, or, (if attributive), used to affirm the attribute — of the subject —, and further limited by the adverbial adjunct, (word, phrase, or clause), —.

[\*\* See Analysis, 37–40; A. & P. Gr.—594.]

## II. THE PASSIVE VOICE.

An analysis of the English verb will show that in the *passive voice* there is, strictly speaking, only *one* form, viz., the *past participle*, having the following uses and connections:

1. Joined directly with a substantive (its subject), to express the receiving of an act ; as, He saw *me ruined*, and helped me.

2. Used as an *attribute* of the subject, after an attributive verb, most commonly the verb *to be* ; as, I am *hurt*.—He was *despised*.

Instead of the commonly received method of parsing the passive voice, in all the moods and tenses, we may separate it into the verb *to be* as a copula, and the past participle used as an attribute.

### III. ADVERBS, PREPOSITIONS, AND CONJUNCTIONS.

Many adverbs, prepositions, and conjunctions were originally *nouns* or *verbs*, which have become entirely or almost obsolete, or are abbreviated modes derived from other parts of speech. The following are examples :

#### *Adverbs.*

*Aghast*, from *agaze*, to look with astonishment.

*Ago*, a contraction of *agone*, from *go*.

*Asunder*, from participle *asundered*, separated.

*Farewell*, from an old verb, meaning *to go*, etc., and *well*.

#### *Prepositions.*

*Beyond*, from *be* and *gangan*, to go.

*Athwart*, from an old verb, meaning *to twist*.

*Among*, from an old verb, meaning *to mix*.

*But*, from an old verb, (*be-utan*), *to be out*.

*Concerning*, participle, used absolutely ; as, "Concerning virtue."

*Except*, (verb), *to leave out*, etc.

#### *Conjunctions.*

*Since*, from *seon*, to see, (participle.)

*Lest*, from *lesan*, to dismiss.

*And*, imperative, from an old verb, meaning *to add*.

*Yet*, from *getan*, to obtain, etc.

\* \* For some curious notes on this subject, see *Noah Webster's Grammar* and *Tooke's "Diversions of Purley."*

## IV. SYNOPTICAL TABLES.

For the purpose of aiding the pupil in seeing at one view the leading characteristics and distinctions of the different parts of speech, the following synoptical view is presented :

### 1. Table of Nouns.

|        |           |                                   |                                     |            |           |  |
|--------|-----------|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------|-----------|--|
| NOUNS. | Common.   | Class names....                   | { Sensible.<br>Rational.            | ACCIDENTS. | Person... | { First.<br>Second.<br>Third.              |
|        |           | Collective names.                 |                                     |            | Gender.   | { Masculine.<br>Feminine.<br>Neuter.       |
|        |           | Names of materials.               |                                     |            | Number.   | { Singular.<br>Plural.                     |
|        |           | Names of measures, etc.           |                                     |            | Case .... | { Nominative.<br>Possessive.<br>Objective. |
|        |           | Abstract.....                     | { Qualities.<br>Actions.<br>States. |            |           |  |
|        | Proper... | Particular names.                 |                                     |            |           |  |
|        |           | In transition state. <sup>1</sup> |                                     |            |           |  |

### 2. Table of the Articles.

|                |                 |   |
|----------------|-----------------|---|
| ARTICLES ..... | DEFINITE.....   | The.  |
|                | INDEFINITE..... | { A, before a consonant.<br>An, before a vowel. |

### 3. Table of Adjectives.

|                       |                     |                        |  |
|-----------------------|---------------------|------------------------|--|
| ADJECTIVES - CLASSES. | 1. OF QUALITY ....  | Sensible.....          | as, Red.   |
|                       |                     | Comparative.....       | Long.  |
|                       |                     | Rational .....         | Pleasant.  |
|                       | 2. OF QUANTITY....  | Numeral..              | { Definite.. { Cardinal... One.<br>Ordinal... First. |
|                       |                     | Indefinite.....        | Few, many.   |
|                       |                     | Distributive.....      | Each.  |
|                       |                     | Measure.....           | Much.  |
|                       | 3. CIRCUMSTANTIAL.  | Time .....             | Daily.   |
|                       |                     | Place.....             | Eastern.   |
|                       |                     | Nation.....            | American.  |
|                       | 4. PARTICIPIAL..... | Descriptive....        | Amusing.   |
|                       |                     | Verbal (compound)..... | Unmerited.   |

\* \* Pupils may be exercised in constructing tables and other synoptical statements of the parts of speech, and "elements" or parts of sentences, at the option of the teacher.

## 4. Table of Pronouns.

|           |                            |                         |   |  |
|-----------|----------------------------|-------------------------|---|--|
| PRONOUNS. | <b>Personal</b> .....      | <i>Simple</i> .....     | { I,<br>Thou,<br>He, she, it.                                   | { We,<br>You,<br>They.                     |
|           |                            | <i>Compound</i> ....    | { Myself,<br>Thyself, yourself,<br>Himself, herself,<br>itself. | { Ourselves,<br>Yourselves,<br>Themselves. |
|           | <b>Relative</b> .....      | <i>Simple</i> .....     | { Who,<br>Which.  | { That,<br>What                            |
|           |                            | <i>Compound</i> ....    | { Who(so)ever,<br>Which(so)ever,<br>What(so)ever.               |  |
|           | <b>Interrogative</b> ..... |                         | { Who?<br>Which?<br>What?                                       |  |
|           | <b>Adjective</b> .....     | <i>Possessive</i> ....  | { My, thy, his, her, its, one's.<br>Our, your, their.           |  |
|           |                            | <i>Distributive</i> ..  | { Each,<br>Every.   | { Either,<br>Neither.                      |
|           |                            | <i>Demonstrative</i>    | { This, these,<br>That, those.                                  |  |
|           |                            | <i>Indefinite</i> ..... | { None,<br>Any,<br>All,<br>Such.                                | { One,<br>Other,<br>Another,<br>etc.       |

## 5. Table of the Verb.

|        |                                     |   |  |                       |   |                                 |
|--------|-------------------------------------|---|--|-----------------------|---|---------------------------------|
| VERBS. | 1. Nature of the Affirmation.       | { <b>Transitive,</b><br><b>Intransitive,</b><br><b>Attributive.</b> | { ACTIVE,<br>PASSIVE.                                      | <i>Indicative</i> ..  | { Present.<br>Pres.-perf.<br>Past.<br>Past-perf.<br>Future.<br>Fut.-perf. | { Sing.<br>Plural               |
|        |                                     | { <b>Regular,</b><br><b>Irregular,</b><br><b>Defective.</b>         |  |                       |   |                                 |
|        | 2. Form of Inflection.              | { <b>Principal;</b><br>as.....                                      | { Write,<br>Writing,<br>Wrote,<br>Written.                 | <i>Potential</i> ...  | { Present.<br>Pres.-perf.<br>Past.<br>Past-perf.                          |                                 |
|        |                                     | { <b>Auxiliary;</b><br>as,.....                                     | { Have,<br>Be,<br>May,<br>Can,<br>Must,<br>Shall,<br>Will. | <i>Subjunctive</i> .. | { Present.<br>Past.   | { 1. Pers<br>2. Pers<br>3. Pers |
|        | 3. Uses in forming Compound Tenses. |   |  | <i>Imperative</i> ... | Present.  |                                 |
|        |                                     |   |  | <i>Infinitive</i> ... | { Present.<br>Perfect.  |                                 |
|        |                                     |   |  | <i>Participial</i> .. | { Present.<br>Past.<br>Perfect.   |                                 |

## 6. Table of Adverbs.

ADVERBS  
EXPRESS

|   |                              |
|---|------------------------------|
| 1. <b>Manner</b> .....                            | as, Justly, bravely, slowly. |
| 2. <b>Place</b> .....                             | Here, there, whither.        |
| 3. <b>Time</b> .....                              | Now, then, when, often.      |
| 4. <b>Direction</b> .....                         | Upward, downward.            |
| 5. <b>Affirmation</b> .....                       | Certainly, truly, yes.       |
| 6. <b>Negation</b> .....                          | Nay, not, nowise.            |
| 7. <b>Interrogation</b> .....                     | How? why? when?              |
| 8. <b>Comparison</b> .....                        | More, most, as.              |
| 9. <b>Quantity</b> .....                          | Much, some, enough.          |
| 10. <b>Order</b> .....                            | First, secondly, thirdly.    |
| 11. <b>Uncertainty</b> .....                      | Perhaps, probably.           |
| 12. <b>Connection</b> (Conjunctive Adverbs, 300.) |                              |

## 7. Table of Prepositions.

PREPOSITIONS EXPRESS  
RELATIONS OF

|                                 |                                |                                      |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. PLACE .....                  | <i>Rest in</i> .....           | as, He is <b>in</b> the house.       |
|                                 | <i>Motion to or from</i> ..... | He went <b>into</b> the house.       |
|                                 | <i>Rest or motion</i> .....    | <b>Over</b> .                        |
| 2. TIME .....                   | <i>Time and place</i> .....    | <b>At</b> noon, <b>at</b> the table. |
|                                 | <i>Time only</i> .....         | <b>Till</b> noon.                    |
| 3. AGENT OR INSTRUMENT .....    |                                | <b>By</b> his power.                 |
| 4. CAUSE .....                  |                                | <b>For</b> my sake.                  |
| 5. MISCELLANEOUS<br>IDEAS ..... | <i>Separation</i> .....        | <b>Without</b> .                     |
|                                 | <i>Inclination</i> .....       | <b>For</b> .                         |
|                                 | <i>Aversion</i> .....          | <b>Against</b> .                     |
|                                 | <i>Substitution</i> .....      | <b>Instead of</b> .                  |
|                                 | <i>Possession</i> .....        | <b>Of</b> .                          |
|                                 | <i>Reference</i> .....         | <b>Touching</b> .                    |
|                                 | <i>Opposition</i> .....        | <b>Against</b> .                     |

## 8. Table of Conjunctions.

## CONJUNCTIONS.

|                   |                           |  |
|-------------------|---------------------------|--|
| COPULATIVE .....  | <i>Connective</i> .....   | as, { And, also, likewise.<br>{ Moreover, for, etc.  |
|                   | <i>Continuative</i> ..... | { Before, where, after.<br>{ if, unless, until, etc. |
| DISJUNCTIVE ..... | <i>Distributive</i> ..... | { Or, nor.<br>{ Either, neither.                     |
|                   | <i>Adversative</i> .....  | { But, nevertheless.<br>{ Yet, still, whereas, etc.  |



### 9. Table of the Parts of Speech.

\*\* The Parts of Speech and their most common characteristics and accidents, may be presented at one view, as follows:

|                                     |  |                              |  |           |   |
|-------------------------------------|--|------------------------------|--|-----------|---|
| FIRST CLASS:<br>PRINCIPAL ELEMENTS. | <b>Nouns..</b>                             | Common ..                    | Class names.<br>Collective names.<br>Names of materials.<br>Names of measures. | Person..  | { First.<br>Second.<br>Third.   |
|                                     |  | Abstract..                   | { Qualities.<br>Actions.<br>States.  | Gender..  | { Masc.<br>Fem.<br>Neuter.  |
|                                     |  | Proper.....                  |  | Number.   | { Sing.<br>Plural.  |
|                                     | <b>Pronouns</b> .....                      | Personal.                    |  | Case .... | { Nomin.<br>Posses.<br>Object.  |
|                                     |  | Relative.                    |  |           | { Simple.<br>Compound.  |
|                                     |  | Interrogative.<br>Adjective. |  |           | { Possessive.<br>Distributive.<br>Demonstrative.<br>Indefinite.                           |
|                                     | <b>Verbs...</b>                            | Use .....                    | { Transitive. { Active.<br>Intransitive. Passive.<br>Attributive.              |           | { Indicative.<br>Potential.<br>Subjunctive.<br>Imperative.<br>Infinitive.<br>Participial. |
|                                     |  | Form.....                    | { Regular.<br>Irregular.<br>Defective.   |           |   |
|                                     |  | Connection                   | { Principal.<br>Auxiliary.   |           |   |
| SECOND CLASS:<br>ADJUNCTS.          | <b>Adjectives</b> .....                    |                              | { 1. Of Quality.<br>2. Of Quantity.<br>3. Circumstantial.<br>4. Participial.   |           |   |
|                                     | <b>Articles</b> .....                      |                              | { Definite.<br>Indefinite.   |           |   |
|                                     | <b>Adverbs</b> .....                       |                              | { Place.<br>Time.<br>Affirmation.<br>Manner, etc. (294.)                       |           |   |
| THIRD CLASS:<br>CONNECTIVES.        | <b>Conjunctions</b> .....                  |                              | { Copulative.....  |           | { Connective.<br>Continuative.<br>Distributive.<br>Adversative.                           |
|                                     |  |                              | { Disjunctive.....   |           |   |
|                                     | <b>Prepositions</b> .....                  |                              | { Place.<br>Time.<br>Agent, or Instrument.<br>Cause.<br>Miscellaneous.         |           |   |
| FOURTH CLASS:<br>ATTENDANTS.        | <b>Interjections</b> , — various emotions. |                              |  |           |   |
|                                     | <b>Expletives</b> , or Words of Euphony.   |                              |  |           |   |

Tenses, etc.

C'est plate hier madame  
la classe anglaise ????

med.  
st.  
ond.  
rd.  
c.  
t.  
ter.  
al.  
nin.  
es.  
ot.

Taxes, etc.